

GRAMMAR MADE EASY

# SPANISH GRAMMAR MADE EASY

SECOND EDITION

MIKE ZOLLO AND  
ALAN WESSON

[www.cervantes.ir](http://www.cervantes.ir)



# Spanish Grammar Made Easy

*Spanish Grammar Made Easy* is the ideal introduction to the basics of Spanish grammar for anyone new to the language or looking to refresh their knowledge.

This second edition features:

- concise and jargon-free explanations supported by examples
- exercises throughout to reinforce learning
- a 'fast-track' option for more advanced learners
- a full answer key, making the *Grammar* ideal for self-study.

A companion website is available at <http://cw.routledge.com/textbooks/9781138955820>. With over 200 additional exercises and audio, it provides ample grammar practice for learners as well as the opportunity to practise listening and pronunciation skills.

*Spanish Grammar Made Easy* presents the essential patterns and rules of the Spanish language in a clear and accessible manner. It is the ideal *Grammar* for those wishing to supplement their learning and move beyond the phrasebook level.

**Mike Zollo** has taught Spanish, French, and Italian for over 45 years; he is author of more than 20 language textbooks in Spanish and Italian and for many years was a Principal and Chief Examiner for Spanish GCSE, AS, and A2.

**Alan Wesson** is an experienced writer of modern languages textbooks in French, German, Italian and Spanish.

# **Grammar Made Easy**

Series Editor: Rosi McNab

Titles in the series:

*German Grammar Made Easy* 2nd Edition

*Italian Grammar Made Easy*

*Spanish Grammar Made Easy* 2nd Edition

<https://www.routledge.com/Grammar-Made-Easy/book-series/GME>

Mike Zollo, Alan Wesson

second edition

spanish  
grammar  
made  
easy



 **Routledge**  
Taylor & Francis Group  
LONDON AND NEW YORK

[www.cervantes.ir](http://www.cervantes.ir)

Second edition published 2018  
by Routledge  
2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4RN

and by Routledge  
711 Third Avenue, New York, NY 10017

*Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group, an informa business*

© 2018 Mike Zollo and Alan Wesson

The right of Mike Zollo and Alan Wesson to be identified as authors of this work has been asserted by them in accordance with sections 77 and 78 of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilised in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

*Trademark notice:* Product or corporate names may be trademarks or registered trademarks, and are used only for identification and explanation without intent to infringe.

First edition published by Hodder Education 2005

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data  
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data  
Names: Zollo, Mike, author. | Wesson, Alan, author.  
Title: Spanish grammar made easy / Mike Zollo and Alan Wesson.  
Description: Second edition. | Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon ; New York, NY : Routledge, [2017] | Text in English and Spanish. | Includes index.  
Identifiers: LCCN 2017010942| ISBN 9781138955820 (pbk. : alk. paper) | ISBN 9781315666068 (ebook)  
Subjects: LCSH: Spanish language--Grammar. | Spanish language--Textbooks for foreign speakers--English. | Spanish language--Spoken Spanish. | Spanish language--Self-instruction.  
Classification: LCC PC4112 .Z66 2017 | DDC 468.2/421--dc23|LC record available at <https://lccn.loc.gov/2017010942>

ISBN: 978-1-138-09577-9 (hbk)  
ISBN: 978-1-138-95582-0 (pbk)  
ISBN: 978-1-315-66606-8 (ebk)

Typeset in Futura and New Baskerville by  
Servis Filmsetting Ltd, Stockport, Cheshire

Visit the companion website: <http://cw.routledge.com/textbooks/9781138955820>

# CONTENTS

Introduction	1
A simple guide to the parts of speech	2

## 1 Verbs

<b>1.1</b> Verbs: talking about what you do	4
<b>1.1.1</b> What is the infinitive?	5
<b>1.1.2</b> Groups of verbs	7
<b>1.1.3</b> Irregular verbs	8
<b>1.1.4</b> The 'persons' of the verb	9
<b>1.1.5</b> Fast track: verbs	12

<b>1.2</b> Talking about what you are doing now: the present tense	13
<b>1.2.1</b> Talking about what you are doing at this moment: the present continuous tense	14
<b>1.2.2</b> Talking about yourself: <i>yo</i>	14
<b>1.2.3</b> Talking to someone younger or someone you know well: <i>tú</i>	24
<b>1.2.4</b> Talking about someone or something else: <i>él/ella</i> and <i>usted</i>	30
<b>1.2.5</b> Talking about yourself and someone else: <i>nosotros/as</i>	36
<b>1.2.6</b> Talking to more than one person you know well: <i>vosotros/as</i>	39
<b>1.2.7</b> Talking about other people and things: <i>ellos/ellas</i> and <i>ustedes</i>	42
<b>1.2.8</b> Fast track: present tense	47

<b>1.3</b> Saying 'no', asking questions and telling someone what to do: negatives, interrogatives and imperatives	53
<b>1.3.1</b> Negatives: how to say what you don't do	53
<b>1.3.2</b> Interrogatives: asking questions	54
<b>1.3.3</b> Imperatives: giving orders, directions or instructions	56
<b>1.3.4</b> Fast track: negatives, interrogatives and imperatives	64

<b>1.4</b>	Talking about what has already happened: the past tenses	65
1.4.1	The perfect tense	67
1.4.2	How to form the past participle	69
1.4.3	Reflexive verbs in the perfect tense	72
1.4.4	When to use the imperfect tense	74
1.4.5	How to form the imperfect tense	75
1.4.6	Checklist: imperfect tense	77
1.4.7	The preterite tense	78
1.4.8	Checklist: preterite tense	83
1.4.9	Preterite or imperfect?	83
1.4.10	Fast track: the past tenses	84
<b>1.5</b>	Talking about what will happen: the future tenses and the conditional	85
1.5.1	The near future/immediate future: I am going to ...	86
1.5.2	The future simple tense: I will ...	88
1.5.3	The conditional – how to say: I would ...	90
1.5.4	Fast track: future and conditional	93
<b>1.6</b>	Expressing wishes, desires, doubts and uncertainties: the subjunctive	95
1.6.1	Expressing uncertainty, wishes and desires: how to form the subjunctive	96
1.6.2	Expressions which take the subjunctive	98
1.6.3	Recognising the subjunctive	99
1.6.4	Fast track: the subjunctive	100
<b>1.7</b>	Fast track: verbs	101
<b>1.8</b>	Useful expressions using verbs	104
1.8.1	To be or not to be: <i>ser</i> or <i>estar</i> ?	104
1.8.2	Special uses of <i>tener</i>	105
1.8.3	There is/There are: <i>hay</i>	109
1.8.4	To know: <i>conocer</i> or <i>saber</i> ?	109
1.8.5	Impersonal verbs	110
1.8.6	To take, bring, look for, fetch, meet a person	110
1.8.7	To remember	111
1.8.8	Negative expressions	112
1.8.9	Question words and word order	113
1.8.10	Since ( <i>desde hace</i> ); to have just ( <i>acabar de</i> )	114
1.8.11	Fast track: useful expressions using verbs	116

<b>2</b>	<b>Nouns and determiners</b>	
<b>2.1</b>	Nouns and gender	118
<b>2.2</b>	Nouns and the words for 'the': <i>el</i> and <i>la</i>	119
<b>2.2.1</b>	The neutral article: <i>lo</i>	120
<b>2.3</b>	Nouns and the words for 'the' in the plural: <i>los</i> and <i>las</i>	120
<b>2.3.1</b>	Common irregular plurals	121
<b>2.4</b>	Nouns and the words for 'a': <i>un</i> and <i>una</i>	122
<b>2.4.1</b>	Nouns with masculine and feminine forms	122
<b>2.5</b>	How to tell if a noun is masculine or feminine	123
<b>2.6</b>	'My', 'your', 'his', 'her', etc.: possessive adjectives	125
<b>2.6.1</b>	My ( <i>mi, mis</i> )	125
<b>2.6.2</b>	Your ( <i>tu, tus</i> )	126
<b>2.6.3</b>	His, her and its ( <i>su, sus</i> )	127
<b>2.6.4</b>	Our ( <i>nuestro/a, nuestros/as</i> )	128
<b>2.6.5</b>	Your ( <i>vuestro/a, vuestros/as</i> )	129
<b>2.6.6</b>	Their ( <i>su, sus</i> )	129
<b>2.6.7</b>	Your (formal) ( <i>su, sus</i> )	129
<b>2.6.8</b>	Fast track: nouns and determiners	130
<b>2.7</b>	More determiners	132
<b>2.7.1</b>	This, these: <i>este/esta</i> and <i>estos/estas</i>	132
<b>2.7.2</b>	That, those: <i>ese/esa/esos/esas</i> and <i>aquel/aquella/aquellos/aquellas</i>	133
<b>2.7.3</b>	¿Cuánto/Cuánta? and ¿Cuántos/Cuántas?	134
<b>2.7.4</b>	Some, other, all, any, every, etc.	134
<b>3</b>	<b>Pronouns</b>	
<b>3.1</b>	<i>yo, tú, usted, él, ella</i> , etc.: subject pronouns	137
<b>3.1.1</b>	<i>Yo</i> – I: the first person singular	138
<b>3.1.2</b>	<i>Tú</i> – you: the familiar singular form	138
<b>3.1.3</b>	<i>Él/ella</i> – he/she/it: the third person singular	138
<b>3.1.4</b>	<i>Usted</i> – you: the formal singular form	138
<b>3.1.5</b>	<i>Nosotros/as</i> – we: the first person plural	139
<b>3.1.6</b>	<i>Vosotros/as</i> – you: the familiar plural form	139
<b>3.1.7</b>	<i>Ellos/ellas</i> – they: the third person plural	139
<b>3.1.8</b>	<i>Ustedes</i> – you: the formal plural form	140
<b>3.1.9</b>	Fast track: subject pronouns	140



<b>3.2</b>	<i>Lo, la, los, las</i> – him, her, it, them: direct object pronouns	142
<b>3.2.1</b>	<i>Lo, la, los, las</i> – him, her, it, them, you	142
<b>3.2.2</b>	<i>Me, te, nos, os</i> – me, you, us	143
<b>3.2.3</b>	Fast track: direct object pronouns	144
<b>3.3</b>	<i>Me, te, le, nos, os, les</i> : indirect object pronouns	145
<b>3.3.1</b>	Word order: indirect object pronouns	146
<b>3.3.2</b>	Word order: direct and indirect object pronouns	147
<b>3.3.3</b>	Fast track: indirect object pronouns	148
<b>3.4</b>	<i>Mí, ti</i> , etc.: prepositional/disjunctive pronouns	149
<b>3.5</b>	Object pronouns and the imperative	150
<b>3.5.1</b>	Pronouns with reflexive verbs in the imperative	151
<b>3.5.2</b>	Order of pronouns in the imperative	151
<b>3.6</b>	¿ <i>Quién?</i> ¿ <i>Qué?</i> : interrogative words	152
<b>3.7</b>	<i>Mío, tuyo</i> , etc.: possessive pronouns	153
<b>3.8</b>	<i>Que, quien</i> , etc.: relative pronouns	154
<b>3.8.1</b>	<i>Que</i> – who, which, that	155
<b>3.8.2</b>	<i>Quien(es)</i> – (with, for, etc.) whom	155
<b>3.8.3</b>	<i>El cual</i> , etc. – who/whom/which	156
<b>3.8.4</b>	<i>Cuyo/a, cuyos/as</i> – whose	156
<b>3.9</b>	<i>Éste/ésta, ése/ésa, aquél/aquélla</i> – this, that, etc.	157
<b>3.10</b>	Fast track: pronouns	159
<b>4</b>	<b>Adjectives</b>	
<b>4.1</b>	Adjectival agreement	163
<b>4.1.1</b>	Adjectives ending in <i>-o</i>	164
<b>4.1.2</b>	Adjectives ending in <i>-e</i>	164
<b>4.1.3</b>	Adjectives ending in a consonant	165

4.1.4	Other patterns	165
4.1.5	Adjectives of nationality	167
4.1.6	Colours	168
4.1.7	Apocopation	169
<b>4.2</b>	The position of adjectives	170
<b>4.3</b>	Fast track: adjectives	170
<b>4.4</b>	Big, bigger, biggest: the comparative and superlative	172
4.4.1	Comparing two people or things	172
4.4.2	The superlative: 'the most ...' and 'the least ...'	173
4.4.3	Saying 'as (big) as'	174
4.4.4	Better, worse, older and younger: irregular comparisons	175
4.4.5	Fast track: comparative and superlative	176
<b>5</b>	<b>Adverbs</b>	
<b>5.1</b>	Formation of adverbs	178
5.1.1	Regular adverbs	178
5.1.2	Irregular adverbs	178
5.1.3	Pairs of adverbs	178
<b>5.2</b>	Other useful adverbs	179
<b>5.3</b>	Comparison of adverbs	179
<b>5.4</b>	Fast track: adverbs	179
<b>6</b>	<b>Prepositions</b>	
<b>6.1</b>	Recognising prepositions	181
<b>6.2</b>	Using prepositions	181
6.2.1	<i>a</i> and <i>en</i>	181
6.2.2	<i>por</i> and <i>para</i>	182
6.2.3	<i>con</i> and <i>sin</i>	182
6.2.4	<i>de</i> and <i>entre</i>	182
6.2.5	<i>hacia</i> and <i>hasta</i>	183
6.2.6	<i>según</i>	183

6.2.7	<i>sobre, en</i> and <i>encima de</i>	183
6.2.8	<i>detrás de, tras</i> and <i>después de</i>	183
6.2.9	<i>delante de, ante</i> and <i>enfrente de</i>	183
6.2.10	<i>desde</i>	183
6.2.11	Fast track: prepositions	184

## 7 **Conjunctions and other useful words** 186

Appendix I: verb tables	187
Appendix II: grammar: what is it?	198
Answers	205

# INTRODUCTION

*Spanish Grammar Made Easy* is a Spanish grammar workbook aimed at adult non-linguists, that is adults with some rudimentary knowledge of Spanish, who do not necessarily know anything about grammar, but need to learn about it so they can progress beyond phrasebook Spanish. This book will also provide enough knowledge of grammar for those who spend a lot of time exposed to Spanish and who need the grammatical framework on which to hang the language they already have.

In the past, grammar has been seen as a barrier to language learning. It has put more people off learning a language than it has helped. Because of the way grammar has been portrayed, students were often made to feel that only those who could master ‘conjugations’ and ‘declensions’ could learn a language. Equally, many adult learners will simply have forgotten what they learned at school! In fact, you can drive a car without mastering the principles of the internal combustion engine – but if you do learn where to put the oil and how to check the tyres and fill up the windscreen wash, it does help!

Grammar is about recognising word patterns which give you a framework to understand and manipulate a language; if you know the framework, you can ‘build’ new language of your own instead of having to learn everything by heart. The off-putting terms mentioned above are just the technical terminology of language-learning: ‘conjugations’ are simply the patterns of changing verb forms which explain ‘who is doing’ and ‘when they are doing it’. You’ll be relieved to know that, like English, Spanish doesn’t have declensions; they are the patterns in which nouns and other words change to alter their meaning in more complex languages like Latin and German.

For those who already know some Spanish grammar, short cuts are marked with ►► to enable you to go straight to the information you need. If you feel you

would like to have more in-depth knowledge about a particular grammar point, please refer to *¡Viva la Gramática!* (intermediate level), *¡Acción Gramática* (advanced level) P. Turk and M. Zollo, or to *A New Reference Grammar of Modern Spanish* (degree level), J. Butt & C. Benjamin, 1988/1994/2000/2004, 4th edn.

A companion website which contains most of the exercises from the book as well as some additional material accompanies this book. Most exercises are recorded so that you can listen to a native speaker saying the sentences and there is a ‘click on’ facility to allow you to read the English translation. There is also some additional listening material which provides a useful resource and brings the language to life.

## A simple guide to the parts of speech



**If you know what verbs, nouns, pronouns, adverbs, etc. are, go on to 1.1.**

The most useful categories of words to recognise are:

### 1 Verbs – ‘doing’ words

Verbs tell you what someone or something is or does.

*I am excited! I am going to Spain. My friend booked the flight. We are going to a meeting.*

You also use them to ask questions ...

*Have you seen the film? Are they all right?*

... and to give instructions.

*Fetch it! Slow down! Help me! Wait! Let's sit down.*

Verbs usually present the most complications, so the section dealing with them is the longest one and comes first in the book.

### 2 Nouns – ‘naming’ words

Nouns are the words which tell you:

- what something is:  
*a timetable, a train, a station, a town, a secret, apples and pears*
- who someone is:  
*a steward, a bank clerk, a baker, a student, doctors and nurses*

### 3 Pronouns

Pronouns are words which ‘stand in’ for a noun.

Sr Morales is Spanish. Sr Morales lives in Madrid.

Instead of repeating *Sr Morales*, you can say *he*.

Sr Morales is Spanish. *He* lives in Madrid.

In the same way, you can say *she* instead of repeating *Marisa* in the following sentence.

Marisa works in Santander. *She* works at the ferry port.

These are also pronouns: *I, you, it, one, we, they, me, us, them.*

### 4 Adjectives

Adjectives are ‘describing’ words. They are used to describe something or someone.

the *new* house, the *red* car, a *tiny* flat, a *wet* day, a *busy* secretary, *tasty* snacks, *expensive* gifts

### 5 Adverbs

Adverbs are words which usually describe a verb, e.g. they describe how something is done. They often answer the question *How?* and in English they often end in *-ly*.

He runs *fast*. She eats *slowly*. It comes *naturally*!

### 6 Prepositions

Prepositions are words which usually tell you where something is, e.g. *in, under, on*. Words such as *to, for, with, without, before* and *after* are also prepositions.



Do you find these grammatical names for different types of word confusing or difficult to remember? If you think about their names, most describe what they do! We have also included at the end of this book an appendix called ‘Grammar – what is it?’ which will tell you all you need to know about grammatical terms.

# 1 VERBS

## 1.1 Verbs: talking about what you do



If you know what a verb is, go on to 1.1.1.

You use a verb to talk about what someone or something does, is doing, has done or intends to do, or what someone is being, has been or intends to be. A verb can be called a 'doing' or 'being' word.



To find out if a word is a verb, ask yourself if someone could do it.

### I Which of these words are things you can 'do'?

- a walk
- b trainers
- c shout
- d invent
- e loud
- f i-pad
- g behind
- h red
- i listen
- j before

Some words can be used as verbs and as nouns or adjectives, e.g. *drink* can be a drink in a cup or part of the verb *to drink*.



Ask: Are they doing it? If they are, it is a verb.

### II Which of the highlighted words are being used as verbs?

- a Jack and Jill are to appear in a **play** at the local theatre.
- b They will **play** the leading parts.
- c They **work** during the day in an office.
- d After **work** they go to rehearsals.
- e Tonight they are having a **meeting** to discuss the production.
- f They are **meeting** in the theatre bar.
- g They need to discuss **finances**.
- h A local sponsor usually **finances** the productions.

- i The producer **reports** that this time there will be no sponsorship.  
j According to newspaper **reports** the sponsors have gone bankrupt.

### 1.1.1 What is the infinitive?



**If you know what the infinitive is, go on to 1.1.2.**

When you look up a verb in a dictionary, you will find the infinitive form of it listed first. This is the 'name' of the verb.

In English, the infinitive consists of *to* + verb, e.g. *to eat*, *to build*, *to paint*. Sometimes an English infinitive is used without 'to'.

The infinitive is often used in Spanish to give commands, for example on public notices, especially when telling people not to do something:

Abrir con cuidado.  
¡No pisar la hierba!

Open carefully.  
Don't walk on the grass!

Below are some Spanish infinitives. You probably know some of them already or can guess what they mean.



Try to look for similarities between the Spanish and the English. Some are obvious: for example, **organizar** means to organise. Others are less obvious, such as **viajar**, which means to travel (or to go on a voyage); another is **examinar**, meaning *to look at/check*, both similar to *examine*, which is of course another meaning for this verb. Don't be afraid to try out these little 'leaps of faith', thinking around the areas of possible meaning: your guesses will usually be correct.

**I** See how many of these Spanish infinitives you can match up with their English counterparts.

- |                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| <b>a</b> hablar    | to wash          |
| <b>b</b> preparar  | to travel        |
| <b>c</b> organizar | to study         |
| <b>d</b> entrar    | to look at/check |
| <b>e</b> viajar    | to invite        |
| <b>f</b> llevar    | to prepare       |
| <b>g</b> examinar  | to speak         |
| <b>h</b> invitar   | to carry/wear    |
| <b>i</b> lavar     | to organise      |
| <b>j</b> estudiar  | to enter         |

These are usually referred to as **-ar** verbs because their infinitive form ends in **-ar**.





If you have problems working out the meanings of some of these verbs, try using [www.wordreference.com](http://www.wordreference.com).

**II** Here are some more **-ar** verbs to match up. How many of them do you know already? They all have to do with food and eating.

<b>a</b> cocinar	to appreciate
<b>b</b> cenar	to roast
<b>c</b> desayunar	to have to eat or drink
<b>d</b> apreciar	to mix
<b>e</b> asar	to dine
<b>f</b> merendar	to lunch
<b>g</b> echar	to cut
<b>h</b> cortar	to have a teatime snack
<b>i</b> tomar	to cook
<b>j</b> almorzar	to have breakfast
<b>k</b> mezclar	to pour



If you find it difficult to learn new words, try to find a 'hook' to hang them on: e.g. **cocinar** is based on **cocina** – *kitchen*, which is like *cuisine* in French. Similarly, if you know **corto** – *short*, you can work out for yourself that **cortar** must mean to cut, i.e. 'to make short'.



More than 50% of English words derive from Latin, as do more than 90% of Spanish words. This often makes it easy to guess the meaning of new Spanish words.

**III** What do you think the Spanish for these verbs would be? Cover up the Spanish and see if you can work it out, or join the correct pairs with a line.

<b>a</b> to begin	terminar
<b>b</b> to accept	evaluar
<b>c</b> to separate	publicar
<b>d</b> to evaluate	navegar
<b>e</b> to steal	girar
<b>f</b> to sail	comenzar
<b>g</b> to publish	separar
<b>h</b> to turn (round)	robar
<b>i</b> to continue	continuar
<b>j</b> to finish/end	aceptar



Most verbs based on a noun or an adjective, and most of those based on words 'imported' from other languages, are **-ar** verbs:

desayuno	breakfast	desayunar	to have breakfast
escaso	rare	escasear	to be rare/become rare
chutar	to shoot (in football)	wasapear	to send a WhatsApp! message

### 1.1.2 Groups of verbs

group 1: -ar verbs	group 2: -er verbs	group 3: -ir verbs
comprar	beber	vivir
hablar	comer	escribir



**If you know how to find the 'stem' or 'root' of a verb, go on to 1.1.3.**

In English, we just have regular and irregular verbs. A verb like *to dance* is regular: *dance, dances, danced, danced, dancing* and a verb like *to fly* is irregular: *fly, flies, flew, flown, flying*. As you have probably already noticed, Spanish verbs are more complicated! Spanish schoolchildren have to spend years learning all about Spanish verbs, but we can use some shortcuts. Spanish also has regular and irregular verbs, but we usually divide Spanish regular verbs into three main groups to make them easier to learn, depending on whether the infinitive ends in (1) **-ar**, (2) **-er** or (3) **-ir**.

The stem, or root, of the verb is the part which is left after you take off the ending. It is used in making the other forms of the verb which you use to talk about the past, present and the future.

**I** Which group do these verbs belong to, and what is their stem? (Remember: take off the **-ar**, **-er** or **-ir** to find the stem.)

- |          |          |                   |          |
|----------|----------|-------------------|----------|
| <b>a</b> | vender   | to sell           | (2/vend) |
| <b>b</b> | mostrar  | to show           | .....    |
| <b>c</b> | cantar   | to sing           | .....    |
| <b>d</b> | salir    | to go out         | .....    |
| <b>e</b> | lavar    | to wash           | .....    |
| <b>f</b> | acabar   | to end            | .....    |
| <b>g</b> | escuchar | to listen         | .....    |
| <b>h</b> | cerrar   | to close/shut     | .....    |
| <b>i</b> | dejar    | to leave (behind) | .....    |
| <b>j</b> | coger    | to take           | .....    |
| <b>k</b> | escoger  | to choose         | .....    |

<b>l</b>	llevar	to carry, wear	.....
<b>m</b>	regresar	to return (home)	.....
<b>n</b>	venir	to come	.....
<b>o</b>	dormir	to sleep	.....



Fortunately, over 80% of Spanish verbs belong to group 1 (**-ar** verbs) and they are mostly regular. When we say they are regular, we mean they follow the same pattern, so if you learn one, you can work out the endings you need for all the others. That's a very useful shortcut!

### 1.1.3 Irregular verbs

Some verbs are awkward and don't really fit into any pattern. They are called 'irregular' verbs. This means that you have to learn them separately and, of course, they are the verbs you are likely to want to use most. Fortunately, you probably know quite a lot of them already, although you might not be aware of it: for example, you probably know that *I know* is (**yo**) **sé** or *I don't know* is (**yo**) **no sé** but you may not know that the infinitive is **saber**.

Note that in Spanish the person word (**yo – I**, etc.) is only used when emphasis or clarification is needed, because the different verb endings for each person are clear and distinctive in both speech and writing.

These are the most important irregular verbs to learn, because they are the most used:

infinitive:

ser – to be\*    estar – to be\*    tener – to have    ir – to go

**yo** form:

soy – I am    estoy – I am    tengo – I have    voy – I am going

(\*For the different uses of **ser** and **estar** see 1.8.1.)

Some verbs just have an irregular **yo** form (see 1.2.2 D). Others containing an **-e-** or **-o-** have a spelling change in some forms (see sections on stem-changing verbs in 1.2.2–4 and 1.2.7).

Some verbs with an irregular **yo** form:

hacer	to do/make	hago	I do/make
coger	to take	cojo	I take
conocer	to know (a person)	conozco	I know
dar	to give	doy	I give

Some verbs with stem changes:

cerrar	to close	cierro	I close
querer	to want	quiero	I want
preferir	to prefer	prefiero	I prefer
probar	to try on	pruebo	I try on
volver	to return	vuelvo	I return
dormir	to sleep	duermo	I sleep

Note also that verbs based on an irregular verb follow the same irregular pattern, for example:

hacer – to make/do → deshacer – to undo/take to pieces

tener – to have → retener – to retain

coger – to take → escoger – to choose

probar – to try on → aprobar – to approve



Always look for patterns which will help you to remember new words, e.g.

reír – to laugh → sonreír – to smile

## I Match the infinitives.

- |                         |        |
|-------------------------|--------|
| <b>a</b> to know how to | poder  |
| <b>b</b> to see         | ir     |
| <b>c</b> to have        | ser    |
| <b>d</b> to go          | saber  |
| <b>e</b> to be able to  | deber  |
| <b>f</b> to have to     | hacer  |
| <b>g</b> to want to     | querer |
| <b>h</b> to take        | tener  |
| <b>i</b> to be          | coger  |
| <b>j</b> to do          | ver    |

### 1.1.4 The 'persons' of the verb



**If you know about the 'persons' of the verb, go on to 1.1.5.**

- When we talk about ourselves, it is called the 'first person'.
- When we talk about or to *you*, it is called the 'second person'.
- When we talk about someone else, it is called the 'third person'.

Note that in Spanish the formal forms of *you*, **usted** and **ustedes**, use the third person verbs.

In English, we only change the verb ending when we are talking about *he*, *she* or *it*:

	singular	plural
first person	I talk	we talk
second person	you talk	you talk
third person	he/she/it talks	they talk

In many languages, including Spanish, the verb ending changes according to who is doing the action and you have to learn the pattern of the verb. In Spanish, the ending changes in clear patterns to show who is doing the action.



Fortunately, in Spanish not only are the endings spelt differently, they all sound different, so there is never any confusion about who is doing what. This is why the 'person words' are usually not needed.

	singular	plural
first person	(yo) hablo	(nosotros/as) hablamos
second person	(tú) hablas	(vosotros/as) habláis
third person	(él/ella/usted) habla	(ellos/ellas/ustedes) hablan

I	yo
you (familiar singular)	tú
he	él
she	ella
you (formal singular)	usted
we (my friend and I)	nosotros/as
you (familiar plural)	vosotros/as
they	ellos
they (if they are all female)	ellas
you (formal plural)	ustedes

**Yo, tú, él, ella**, etc. are called pronouns because they 'stand in' for, or represent, a person or thing: Mr Smith – *he*; Mr and Mrs Smith – *they*; Jim Smith and I – *we*, etc.

The **tú** form is only used when talking to a child, a relation or a very good friend. It implies a certain degree of familiarity and should not be used to address an adult unless he or she invites you to use it (see 1.2.3), although in many parts of Spain people of your age will use it in addressing you – so you can use it to them. **Usted** is used

for formal situations. Note that in many Hispano-American countries, the archaic form 'vos' is used instead of 'tú'.

The same is true in the plural with **vosotros/as** and **ustedes**. Note that **usted** and **ustedes** use the third person verb forms (*he/she* and *they* respectively).

**Nosotros/as** and **vosotros/as** have masculine and feminine forms, but you can only use the feminine form if all the people concerned are female. Note that there is some variation in the use of 'vosotros/as' to express you in the familiar plural context. In several Hispano-American (Spanish-speaking) countries, and even in parts of southern Spain, 'vosotros/as' is not used, being replaced by 'ustedes'.

**Él/Ella** – *he/she*: there is no word for *it* as everything in Spanish is either masculine or feminine: even a table and chair are feminine words.

**Ellos** is used for a group of male people (or things) or a group that includes one or more males, even if there are more females than males present. **Ellas** is only used for a group of all female people or things.



**For more information on pronouns, go on to 3.1.**

**I Which pronoun would you use?**

- |  |                      |
|--|----------------------|
| <b>a</b> You are talking about yourself:<br>I am speaking.         | tú/yo/él             |
| <b>b</b> You are talking about a girlfriend.                       | yo/vosotros/ella     |
| <b>c</b> You are talking about a male friend.                      | nosotros/él/ella     |
| <b>d</b> You are talking about yourself<br>and a male friend.      | él/ella/nosotros     |
| <b>e</b> You are talking to two little girls.                      | tú/vosotros/vosotras |
| <b>f</b> You are talking to a stranger.                            | usted/vosotros/tú    |
| <b>g</b> You are talking about a group<br>of women.                | ellos/ella/ellas     |
| <b>h</b> You are talking about a mixed group<br>or a group of men. | ellos/ustedes/él     |

**II And which pronoun would you use when talking about the following people?**

- |                                   |                      |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|
| <b>a</b> your friend Pablo        | nosotros/él/ella     |
| <b>b</b> your friend María        | ellas/ella/tú        |
| <b>c</b> Señor Blanco             | vosotros/usted/él    |
| <b>d</b> Señor y señora Lafuente  | ellos/ellas/ustedes  |
| <b>e</b> Señoras Blanco y Botella | ellas/ellos/nosotras |
| <b>f</b> Silvia y Carlota         | ellos/ellas/vosotras |

**g** yourself

**h** Pablo, Guillermo y María

**i** Señores Múgica, Barranco y Durán

**j** yourself and your male friend

tú/vosotros/yo

ellos/vosotros/ellas

nosotros/vosotros/ellos

nosotros/vosotras/yo

### 1.1.5 ► **Fast track:** verbs

**Verbs are ‘doing’ words: you use them to say what you (or someone/something else) are doing and to ask someone what he/she is doing.**

In English, when we look up a verb in the dictionary it is preceded by the word *to*: *to go*; *to drive*; *to eat*, etc. This is called the infinitive.

In Spanish, the infinitive is visible by its last two letters, so it is the *end* of the verb which is important. All Spanish infinitives end in **-ar**, **-er** or **-ir**. Each of these is a sort of ‘last name’ for a large family of verbs which share their behaviour and characteristics.

In English, we just have two main sorts of verbs: regular and irregular.

In Spanish, there are three main groups or families of verbs:

**-ar** verbs which are regular and **-ar** verbs which are irregular

**-er** verbs which are regular and **-er** verbs which are irregular

**-ir** verbs which are regular and **-ir** verbs which are irregular.

In English, regular and irregular verbs change the ending when talking about *he/she/it*:

I speak → he speaks      I go → she goes      I fly → it flies

In Spanish, the verb ending changes for all the different persons of the verb.

The different persons are:

singular		plural	
I	yo	we	nosotros/as
you (familiar)	tú	you (familiar)	vosotros/as
he/she/it	él/ella	they	ellos/ellas
you (formal)	usted	you (formal)	ustedes

# 1.2

## Talking about what you are doing now: the present tense



**If you know about the present tense and when to use it, go on to 1.2.8.**

The present tense is used

- to say what you are doing now: *I am reading.*
- to make a general statement about what happens: *It often rains in northern Spain.*
- to say what usually happens: *We go out on Friday evenings.*
- to talk about something which will happen soon: *Mum arrives on the 7 o'clock train.*
- to describe recent past events in a more vivid way, as in English: *I tell my friend and she starts to laugh.*

In English, we have two ways of talking about the present. We can either use *am, is* or *are* to say what we are doing now ...

I am working.  
My friends are going out.  
It is raining.

... or we can say what usually/generally happens, using the verb without the *am, is* or *are*:

I read magazines.  
They are vegetarian.  
It rains every day.

In Spanish, there are the same two ways of expressing the present tense, but the simple one-word form is enough to describe something going on at present unless you want to emphasise the fact that something is happening right now, in which case the longer form is used. (See 1.2.1.)

Leo el periódico.	I read/I am reading the newspaper.
Trabajan en el aeropuerto.	They work/They are working at the airport.
Sr López coge el autobús.	Mr López is taking/takes the bus.

**I** Find the right verb in the box to say these things in Spanish.

acompañar, cenar, descargar, estudiar, ir, prestar, recoger, telefonar, visitar, volar



- a I am downloading my e-mails.
- b My friend is ringing me when she gets home.
- c She is accompanying her parents to the airport.
- d We are going to the cinema later.
- e She is fetching me.
- f Her parents are lending her their car.
- g They are flying to Buenos Aires.
- h They are visiting their other daughter.
- i She is studying in Argentina.
- j After the cinema we are dining at the Restaurante de la Plata.

### 1.2.1 Talking about what you are doing at this moment: the present continuous tense



**If you know about the present continuous tense and when to use it, go on to 1.2.8.**

As mentioned above, Spanish has a direct equivalent of the English present with *am/ is/ are*, which is known as the present continuous tense. The appropriate part of the verb **estar** in the present tense is used with a part of the main verb which is equivalent to English *-ing*. This is called the gerund (sometimes also known as the present participle). For **-ar** verbs, the gerund ends in **-ando**, and for **-er** and **-ir** verbs it ends in **-iendo**.

**I** Here are examples of the present continuous for each person of the verb. Can you translate them?

- a estoy cantando
- b estás comiendo
- c está bebiendo
- d estamos trabajando
- e estáis viajando
- f están subiendo

There are a few verbs with slightly irregular *-ing* forms which can be learnt easily.

Remember, this form is not used as much in Spanish as it is in English. The normal present is usually enough.

### 1.2.2 Talking about yourself: yo

Remember, in Spanish the verb ending changes according to who is doing the action.



**If you know about the yo form, go to the checklist on page 23.**

A Yo and regular **-ar** verbs

These are verbs which end in **-ar** in the infinitive.

The infinitive is the form you find in the dictionary when you look up a verb.



Over 80% of Spanish verbs end in **-ar** and are regular.

In the **yo** form (or first person) of the present tense, all **-ar** verbs end in **-o**. Try reading the 'first person' column aloud.

infinitive	meaning	first person	meaning
escuchar	to listen	escucho	I listen
explicar	to explain	explico	I explain
hablar	to speak	hablo	I speak
llegar	to arrive	llego	I arrive
llevar	to carry/wear	llevo	I carry/wear
mirar	to look at/watch	miro	I look at/watch
tocar	to touch/play (an instrument)	toco	I touch/play
tomar	to take	tomo	I take
trabajar	to work	trabajo	I work
visitar	to visit	visito	I visit

Remember that all these Spanish forms can also translate *am ...ing*, and that it is not necessary to translate *am* from English into Spanish unless you use the present continuous for emphasis. (See 1.2.1.)



The **yo** form of all **-ar** verbs ends in **-o** except for **estar** – **estoy** and **dar** – **doy**.

**I** How would you say these in Spanish? Remember, **yo** is only needed for clarification or emphasis.

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| <b>a</b> I speak English.                     | Yo ____ inglés.                 |
| <b>b</b> I have tea to drink.                 | ____ té.                        |
| <b>c</b> I am wearing jeans.                  | ____ unos vaqueros.             |
| <b>d</b> I work in an office.                 | ____ en una oficina.            |
| <b>e</b> I am listening to the news.          | ____ las noticias.              |
| <b>f</b> I play the guitar.                   | ____ la guitarra.               |
| <b>g</b> I visit the town.                    | ____ el pueblo.                 |
| <b>h</b> I am watching the children.          | ____ a los niños.               |
| <b>i</b> I am arriving home.                  | ____ a casa.                    |
| <b>j</b> I am explaining the firm's policies. | ____ la política de la empresa. |

## II These are all **-ar** verbs. Fill in the gaps.

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| <b>a</b> ____ en una oficina. (trabajar)          | I work in an office.                  |
| <b>b</b> ____ a las ocho. (llegar)                | I arrive at 8 o'clock.                |
| <b>c</b> ____ mi coche. (aparcar)                 | I park my car.                        |
| <b>d</b> ____ en el edificio. (entrar)            | I enter the building.                 |
| <b>e</b> ____ al conserje. (saludar)              | I greet the caretaker.                |
| <b>f</b> ____ el ascensor al cuarto piso. (tomar) | I take the lift to the fourth floor.  |
| <b>g</b> ____ las llaves en mi bolsillo. (buscar) | I look for my keys in my pocket.      |
| <b>h</b> ____ en mi despacho. (entrar)            | I go into my office.                  |
| <b>i</b> ____ mis papeles de mi cartera. (sacar)  | I take my papers out of my briefcase. |
| <b>j</b> ____ hasta las doce. (trabajar)          | I work until twelve.                  |

Now cover up the left-hand side of the page and see if you can do them again. Say them aloud!



Choose five of the verbs which you didn't know before (or had forgotten) and which you think would be useful to learn. Write down the meaning and the first letter of the verb. See how many you can remember.

## III How would you say the following?

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>a</b> I am going into the shop.           | Yo ____ en la tienda. (entrar)               |
| <b>b</b> I am buying a new car.              | ____ un coche nuevo. (comprar)               |
| <b>c</b> I am calling my secretary.          | ____ a mi secretaria. (llamar)               |
| <b>d</b> I'll have a beer.                   | ____ una cerveza. (tomar)                    |
| <b>e</b> I'm paying.                         | Yo _____. (pagar)                            |
| <b>f</b> I am sending a letter.              | ____ una carta. (enviar)                     |
| <b>g</b> I hope the weather will be fine.    | ____ que haga buen tiempo. (esperar)         |
| <b>h</b> I am trying to answer the question. | ____ de contestar a la pregunta. (tratar)    |
| <b>i</b> I am throwing out the old papers.   | ____ los viejos diarios a la basura. (echar) |
| <b>j</b> I congratulate you!                 | ¡Te ____! (felicitar)                        |



Highlight any verbs which you think would be useful for you to use some time.



Remember, the overwhelming majority of **-ar** verbs are regular. The **yo** forms of all but two **-ar** verbs (**estar** and **dar**: see section D) end in **-o**.

**IV** Complete these sentences with the right form of the verb in brackets and read them aloud.

- a** Yo \_\_\_\_ inglés. (hablar)  
**b** \_\_\_\_ a Londres. (viajar)  
**c** Me \_\_\_\_ una noche en Madrid. (quedar)  
**d** \_\_\_\_ a un taxi. (llamar)  
**e** \_\_\_\_ a la estación. (llegar)  
**f** \_\_\_\_ en el despacho de billetes. (entrar)  
**g** \_\_\_\_ un billete para el AVE. (comprar)  
**h** \_\_\_\_ el tren. (esperar)  
**i** \_\_\_\_ en el vagón restaurante. (cenar)  
**j** \_\_\_\_ un correo electrónico. (mandar)  
**k** \_\_\_\_ con mi vecino. (charlar)  
**l** \_\_\_\_ un café. (tomar)  
**m** \_\_\_\_ a mi mejor amigo. (telefonar)  
**n** \_\_\_\_ el campo que pasa a 360 km/h. (mirar)

**B** Yo and regular **-er** verbs

These are verbs which end in **-er** in the infinitive.



Remember, most verbs are **-ar** verbs, so there aren't so many of these.

In the **yo** form (or first person) of the present tense, all **-er** verbs end in **-o** except for **ser – soy** and **saber – sé**. Try reading them aloud.

infinitive	meaning	first person	meaning
aprender	to learn	aprendo	I learn
beber	to drink	bebo	I drink
comer	to eat	como	I eat
comprender	to understand	comprendo	I understand
correr	to run	corro	I run
creer	to believe/ think	creo	I believe/think
leer	to read	leo	I read
proceder	to proceed	procedo	I proceed
responder	to reply	respondo	I reply
vender	to sell	vendo	I sell

V Which of the above verbs would you use for the infinitives (to ...) in these sentences?

- a You have *to drink* this medicine.
- b He has *to eat* his meal.
- c She has *to run*.
- d He has *to respond*.
- e You have *to sell* your house.
- f We have *to read* this book.
- g You must *understand*.
- h You have *to proceed* with care.
- i You have *to try to learn* Spanish grammar!
- j Don't *believe* that!

VI Match the English and the Spanish.

a I drink/am drinking	vendo
b I eat/am eating	procedo
c I run/am running	aprendo
d I read/am reading	comprendo
e I sell/am selling	bebo
f I learn/am learning	corro
g I proceed/am proceeding	respondo
h I believe	como
i I understand	leo
j I am responding	creo



Some **-er** verbs have a special spelling and pronunciation change in the **yo** form to 'reinforce' their sound (see section D). The most useful ones are **hacer, traer, tener, poner, saber** and **conocer**.

C Yo and regular **-ir** verbs

These are verbs which end in **-ir** in the infinitive.



Remember, most verbs are **-ar** verbs, so there aren't many of these.

Like almost all verbs in the present tense, these end in **-o** when you are talking about yourself (in the first person singular). The only exception is **ir**, which has the form **voy**. Practise saying them aloud, as it will help you to remember them.

infinitive	meaning	first person	meaning
asistir	to attend	asisto	I attend
describir	to describe	describo	I describe
dividir	to divide	divido	I divide
escribir	to write	escribo	I write
recibir	to receive	recibo	I receive
subir	to go up	subo	I go up
sufrir	to suffer	sufro	I suffer
vivir	to live	vivo	I live

**VII** How would you say the following?

- a** I am living at my parents' home. \_\_\_\_\_ en casa de mis padres.  
(vivir)
- b** I am going upstairs. \_\_\_\_\_ arriba. (subir)
- c** I am suffering from an injustice. \_\_\_\_\_ una injusticia. (sufrir)
- d** I am writing a letter. \_\_\_\_\_ una carta. (escribir)
- e** I am describing my friend. \_\_\_\_\_ a mi amigo. (describir)
- f** I divide my time carefully. \_\_\_\_\_ mi tiempo con cuidado.  
(dividir)
- g** I receive lots of e-mail messages. \_\_\_\_\_ mucho correo electrónico.  
(recibir)
- h** I go to mass here on Sundays. \_\_\_\_\_ a la misa aquí los  
domingos. (asistir)

Now cover up the right-hand side of the page and see if you can still do them.

infinitive	meaning	first person	meaning
abrir	to open	abro	I open
admitir	to admit	admito	I admit
cubrir	to cover	cubro	I cover
decidir	to decide	decido	I decide
descubrir	to discover	descubro	I discover
discutir	to discuss	discuto	I discuss
persuadir	to persuade	persuado	I persuade
sobrevivir	to survive	sobrevivo	I survive

**VIII** How would you say the following?

- a** I am going up. Yo \_\_\_\_\_ . (subir)
- b** I live in Granada. \_\_\_\_\_ en Granada. (vivir)
- c** I am deciding today. \_\_\_\_\_ hoy. (decidir)
- d** I am attending the wedding. \_\_\_\_\_ a la boda. (asistir)
- e** I am discussing the matter. \_\_\_\_\_ la cuestión. (discutir)
- f** I suffer every day. \_\_\_\_\_ todos los días. (sufrir)
- g** I persuade my friends. \_\_\_\_\_ a mis amigos. (persuadir)
- h** I accept that I am wrong. \_\_\_\_\_ que estoy equivocado.  
(admitir)

- i** I divide up the cake. \_\_\_\_\_ el pastel. (dividir)  
**j** I survive – just! \_\_\_\_\_ ¡apenas! (sobrevivir)

Now cover up the right-hand side of the page and see if you can still do them.

**IX** How would you say the following?

- a** I am discussing the news. \_\_\_\_\_ las noticias. (discutir)  
**b** I am going up in the lift. \_\_\_\_\_ en el ascensor. (subir)  
**c** I discover the truth. \_\_\_\_\_ la verdad. (descubrir)  
**d** I am dividing up this money. \_\_\_\_\_ este dinero. (dividir)  
**e** I am covering the baby. \_\_\_\_\_ al bebé. (cubrir)  
**f** I am opening the window. \_\_\_\_\_ la ventana. (abrir)



Say the verbs aloud to get used to the sound of the words: which ones sound a little like the English?

**D** Verbs which change their spelling in the yo form

Some verbs in each of the three verb families modify their spelling and pronunciation in the first person singular. This is to make the verb easier to pronounce or to give it a stronger sound. Apart from the first five in the list below, they all still end in **-o** as you would expect.

Here are the most useful examples:

ser – soy	I am
estar – estoy	I am (See 1.8.1 on <b>ser</b> and <b>estar</b> )
dar – doy	I give
ir – voy	I go
saber – sé	I know (a fact)
decir – digo	I say
oír – oigo	I hear
hacer – hago	I do
traer – traigo	I bring
tener – tengo	I have
venir – vengo	I come
poner – pongo	I put
salir – salgo	I go out
conocer – conozco	I know (a person, a place)
conducir – conduzco	I drive
ver – veo	I see

**X** How would you say the following?

- a** I have a brother. \_\_\_\_\_ un hermano. (tener)  
**b** I have to go. \_\_\_\_\_ que irme. (tener)  
**c** I know! ¡Ya lo \_\_\_\_! (saber)  
**d** I put it on the table. Lo \_\_\_\_ en la mesa. (poner)

- e** I go out often. \_\_\_\_\_ con frecuencia. (salir)  
**f** I know that girl. \_\_\_\_\_ a esa chica. (conocer)  
**g** I say this every day. Lo \_\_\_\_\_ todos los días. (decir)  
**h** I can speak Italian. \_\_\_\_\_ hablar italiano. (saber)  
**i** I am giving her a new car. Le \_\_\_\_\_ un coche nuevo. (dar)

Cover up the Spanish. Can you still do them?

E Yo and verbs which change their stem

Some verbs in each of the three main families modify their stem in the first person. This is to make the verb sound stronger by ‘stretching’ the vowel from **-e-** to **-ie-**, or **-o-** to **-ue-**. A few have **-e-** to **-i-**, and just one has a change from **-u-** to **-ue-**.

Here are the most useful examples:

stem change	infinitive	meaning	first person	meaning
<b>e → ie</b>	pensar querer preferir	to think to want to prefer	pienso quiero prefiero	I think I want I prefer
<b>o → ue</b>	contar volver dormir	to count to return to sleep	cuento vuelvo duermo	I count I return I sleep
<b>e → i</b>	pedir	to ask for	pido	I ask for
<b>u → ue</b>	jugar	to play	juego	I play

XI Choose a verb from the list above and complete each sentence with the correct form.

- a** I want to play tennis. \_\_\_\_\_ jugar al tenis.  
**b** I think my girlfriend has a racket. \_\_\_\_\_ que mi novia tiene una raqueta.  
**c** I ask for her racket. Le \_\_\_\_\_ su raqueta.  
**d** I am counting on her. \_\_\_\_\_ con ella.  
**e** I play tennis with you. \_\_\_\_\_ al tenis contigo.  
**f** I prefer to win! ¡\_\_\_\_\_ ganar!  
**g** I go home afterwards. Después \_\_\_\_\_ a casa.  
**h** Then I sleep very well. Luego \_\_\_\_\_ muy bien.

*Reflexive verbs*

Some verbs in English involve an extra ‘person word’, always involving ‘self’; for example, I wash myself.

This is because, whilst I is the subject, the person doing the action, the same person is also the object, i.e. on the



receiving end of the action. In English we also have *yourself*, *himself*, *herself*, *ourselves*, *themselves* to add after the verb whenever the subject and object of the verb are in fact the same person. Spanish has similar ‘self’ words – called reflexive pronouns – but they are normally added in front of the verb, e.g. *me lavo* = I wash myself. Spanish has many more reflexive verbs than English, and in many cases, if you think about it, they do indeed describe actions in which the subject and object are the same, such as *me ducho* – I have a shower.

Why are these verbs called ‘reflexive verbs’? Because the action reflects – *bounces back* – on the subject!

## F Yo and reflexive verbs



**If you know about reflexive verbs, go on to the checklist on page 23.**

We don’t have an equivalent form in English, but you probably already know the reflexive verb **llamarse** *to be called*. **Me llamo** means *I am called* or literally *I call myself*. The infinitive is **llamarse**. Notice how when the infinitive is used, the reflexive ‘self’ word is stuck onto the end of the infinitive, whereas it goes in front of most parts of the verb.

When using a specific part of one of these verbs, start with the appropriate ‘self’ word: when you are talking about yourself, you use **me** and the first person of the verb, just as normal.

As mentioned above, there are more reflexive verbs in Spanish than in English, many of which are not expressed with ‘self’ in English. Notice how most of the following have the idea of doing something to yourself:

infinitive	meaning	first person	meaning
aburrirse	to get bored	me aburro	I get bored
acostarse	to go to bed	me acuesto	I go to bed
despertarse	to wake up	me despierto	I wake up
ducharse	to have a shower	me ducho	I have a shower
lavarse	to wash (oneself)	me lavo	I wash (myself)
levantarse	to get up	me levanto	I get up
llamarse	to be called	me llamo	I am called
pelearse*	to quarrel	me peleo	I quarrel
preguntarse	to wonder	me pregunto	I wonder
sentarse	to sit down	me siento	I sit down
vestirse	to get dressed	me visto	I get dressed

\* *pelearse* is an example of a type of reflexive verb which always involves two or more people, literally meaning ‘to fight *each other*’. The reflexive form is often used with this idea of ‘*each other*’.

## XII How would you say the following?

- a** I wake up at seven o'clock. \_\_\_\_\_ a las siete.  
**b** I get up straight away. \_\_\_\_\_ en seguida.  
**c** I am washing my hair. \_\_\_\_\_ el pelo.  
**d** I am having a shower. \_\_\_\_\_  
**e** I get dressed. \_\_\_\_\_  
**f** I sit down. \_\_\_\_\_  
**g** I wonder whether the taxi \_\_\_\_\_ si el taxi ya ha llegado.  
 has arrived already.  
**h** I am getting bored. \_\_\_\_\_  
**i** I quarrel with my friend. \_\_\_\_\_ con mi amigo.  
**j** I am going to bed. \_\_\_\_\_

## G Saying you like something

Spanish does not really have a verb for *to like*. Instead, it uses *to please* as a sort of 'back-to-front' way of conveying the idea of liking: **me gusta esta casa** literally means *this house pleases me*.

To say you like more than one thing, the verb adds **-n**: **me gustan estas casas**.

Note that the verb agrees with the *thing liked*, which is the subject. The person liking is expressed by a pronoun. There are other expressions which work like this; here is a list of the most useful ones:

verb	I ... (singular)	I ... (plural)	meaning
gustar	me gusta	me gustan	I like ...
encantar	me encanta	me encantan	I like ... a lot, love ...
interesar	me interesa	me interesan	I am interested in ...
apetecer	me apetece	me apetecen	I feel like ...
quedar	me queda	me quedan	I have ... left
doler	me duele	me duelen	my ... hurt(s)
hacer falta	me hace falta	me hacen falta	I need ...

## XIII Say that ...

- a** ... your head hurts \_\_\_\_\_ la cabeza.  
**b** ... you need some aspirin \_\_\_\_\_ aspirina.  
**c** ... you only have two left Sólo \_\_\_\_\_ dos.  
**d** ... you like soluble aspirins \_\_\_\_\_ las aspirinas  
 solubles.  
**e** ... you feel like watching television \_\_\_\_\_ ver la televisión.  
**f** ... you love soap operas \_\_\_\_\_ las telenovelas.  
**g** ... you are interested in the characters \_\_\_\_\_ los personajes.

Checklist: the *yo* form

- When talking about yourself in the present tense, you use **yo** (but only when necessary) and the first person singular of the verb.
- To form the first person singular of the verb, you take off the **-ar/-er/-ir** ending.
- You then add **-o**.
- The most important irregular **yo** forms to remember are:
  - ser – to be → soy – I am (quality, characteristic, profession, etc.)
  - estar – to be → estoy – I am (place or state)
  - tener – to have → tengo – I have
  - ir – to go → voy – I go
  - hacer – to do → hago – I do
- Check you know these other useful irregular verbs:
  - saber – to know → sé – I know (how to do something)
  - conocer – to know → conozco – I know (a person or place)
  - venir – to come → vengo – I come/am coming

**XIV** Write an email message to a new Spanish friend describing yourself, what you do and what you like; try to include about 10 verbs. Only use the ‘yo’ verb forms given in the tables in sections A to G except the forms for ‘gustar’ etc. in table G. When you feel confident, you could try using other verbs, modelling them on those in whichever tables are appropriate.



### The *you* form

As you will find whenever dealing with ‘you’, not only are there different forms depending on how well you know the person and singular and plural forms, but also different usages in various Spanish-speaking communities outside Spain! To help you decide which to use, it is always best to listen to what other people are using and copy them!

### 1.2.3 Talking to someone younger or someone you know well: *tú*

This is the *you* form, or the second person of the verb.

There are actually four forms of *you* in Spanish: the familiar forms **tú** (singular) and **vosotros/as** (plural) and the formal forms **usted** (singular) and **ustedes** (plural). Remember that ‘vos’ is used instead of ‘tú’ in many Hispano-American countries. Note also that ‘vosotros/as’ is not used in some Hispano-American countries and even

in some parts of southern Spain, being replaced by the ‘ustedes’ form.

You use the **tú** form if you are talking to someone you know well – a friend, a child or a pet. You do not use it to a stranger, a business acquaintance or an older person unless invited to do so.

There is a special verb which means to call someone **tú**: **tutear**. If someone says: **Podemos tutearnos, ¿verdad?** it means ‘let’s use the **tú** form’.



The **tú** form is easy, as in all verbs in the present tense, and in many other tenses, it ends in **-as** or **-es**.



**If you are not going to need the tú form, go on to 1.2.4.**

A **Tú** and regular verbs

**-ar verbs**

The **tú** form is formed by adding **-as** to the stem of the verb; remember that in Spanish all letters are pronounced except for **h** (never pronounced), so these endings are very clear and distinct, which is why the **tú** itself is not normally needed in front of the verb:

(yo) hablo, (tú) hablas

**-er and -ir verbs**

The **tú** form is formed by adding **-es** to the stem:

(yo) como, (tú) comes

(yo) vivo, (tú) vives

As mentioned above, ‘vos’ is used instead of ‘tú’ in many Hispano-American countries.

**I** What is the **tú** form of these verbs?

**a** dance

**b** drink

**c** live

**d** speak

**e** watch

**f** eat

**g** listen

**h** write

**i** wash

**j** work

B *Tú* and irregular verbs

some of the most common and useful verbs are irregular in the **tú** form.

infinitive	meaning	second person	meaning
estar	to be	estás	you are
ser	to be	eres	you are
ir	to go	vas	you go

C *Tú* and stem-changing verbs

The verbs which modify the spelling of their stem in the first person ('yo' form) do the same with **tú**. Thus, the 'stretching' vowel **-e-** changes to **-ie-**, and **-o-** to **-ue-**. As before, a few have **-e-** to **-i-**, and just one has a change from **-u-** to **-ue-**.

Here are the most useful examples:

stem change	infinitive	meaning	third person	meaning
<b>e → ie</b>	pensar	to think	piensas	you think
	querer	to want	quieres	you want
	preferir	to prefer	prefieres	you prefer
<b>o → ue</b>	contar	to count	cuentas	you count
	volver	to return	vuelves	you return
	dormir	to sleep	duermes	you sleep
<b>e → i</b>	pedir	to ask for	pides	you ask for
<b>u → ue</b>	jugar	to play	juegas	you play

Note that **tener** is another of these verbs: the **tú** form is **tienes**.

## II Choose a verb from the list above and complete each sentence or question with the correct form. Then, if you are feeling adventurous, translate them into English!

- ¿\_\_\_ jugar al tenis conmigo?
- ¿\_\_\_ que vas a ganar?
- Le \_\_\_ una raqueta a tu amigo.
- \_\_\_ con él, es muy generoso.
- \_\_\_ al tenis conmigo.
- ¡\_\_\_ ganar, pero es imposible!
- Después \_\_\_ a casa.
- Luego \_\_\_ muy bien.

### III Use the right form of the verbs in brackets to tell someone what they are like.

- a** You are talkative. (Tú) \_\_\_\_ hablador(a). (ser)  
**b** You have got a spot on your nose. \_\_\_\_ un grano en la nariz. (tener)  
**c** You go to the swimming pool. \_\_\_\_ a la piscina. (ir)  
**d** You eat pizzas. \_\_\_\_ pizzas. (comer)  
**e** You watch soaps. \_\_\_\_ las telenovelas. (ver)  
**f** You live in Barcelona. \_\_\_\_ en Barcelona. (vivir)  
**g** You speak English. \_\_\_\_ inglés. (hablar)  
**h** You wear jeans. \_\_\_\_ unos vaqueros. (llevar)  
**i** You do sport. \_\_\_\_ deporte. (hacer)  
**j** You play tennis. \_\_\_\_ al tenis. (jugar)

### D Tú and reflexive verbs

Remember, these are verbs which need an extra 'person word' – the reflexive pronoun – because the action of the verb 'bounces back' on the subject. The **tú** form follows the same pattern as the **yo** form but the reflexive pronoun is **te** instead of **me**.

infinitive	meaning	second person	meaning
aburrirse	to get bored	te aburres	you get bored
acostarse	to go to bed	te acuestas	you go to bed
despertarse	to wake up	te despiertas	you wake up
ducharse	to have a shower	te duchas	you have a shower
lavarse	to wash (oneself)	te lavas	you wash (yourself)
levantarse	to get up	te levantas	you get up
llamarse	to be called	te llamas	you are called
pelearse	to quarrel	te peleas	you quarrel
preguntarse	to wonder	te preguntas	you wonder
sentarse	to sit down	te sientas	you sit down
vestirse	to get dressed	te vistes	you get dressed

### IV Match the questions. How would you ask a child ...

- a** his or her name? **i** ¿No te interesas por la actualidad?  
**b** at what time he/she gets up? **ii** ¿Cómo te llamas?  
**c** when he/she goes to bed? **iii** ¿Te peleas con tu hermano?  
**d** if he/she quarrels with his/her brother? **iv** ¿A qué hora te levantas?  
**e** if he/she is not interested in current affairs? **v** ¿A qué hora te acuestas?

- E Asking a friend or relative if he/she likes something  
As we have seen, Spanish uses *to please* as a sort of 'back-to-front' way of conveying the idea of liking. To ask a friend or relative if he/she likes something, use **¿te gusta esta casa?** which literally means *does this house please you?*

To ask if he/she likes more than one thing, the verb adds **-n**: **¿te gustan estas casas?**

There are other expressions which work like this; here is a list of the most useful ones:

verb	do you ... (singular)	do you ... (plural)	meaning
gustar	¿te gusta?	¿te gustan?	do you like ...?
encantar	¿te encanta?	¿te encantan?	do you like ... a lot?
interesar	¿te interesa?	¿te interesan?	are you interested in ...?
apetecer	¿te apetece?	¿te apetecen?	do you feel like ...?
quedar	¿te queda?	¿te quedan?	do you have ... left?
doler	¿te duele?	¿te duelen?	do(es) your ... hurt?
hacer falta	¿te hace falta?	¿te hacen falta?	do you need ...?

## V Ask if ...

- a** ... your friend's feet ache ¿\_\_\_\_\_ los pies?  
**b** ... he/she needs some plasters ¿\_\_\_\_\_ tiritas?  
**c** ... he/she has any left ¿\_\_\_\_\_ tiritas?  
**d** ... he/she likes running ¿\_\_\_\_\_ correr?  
**e** ... he/she feels like going to the cinema ¿\_\_\_\_\_ ir al cine?  
**f** ... he/she likes Almodóvar's films a lot ¿\_\_\_\_\_ las películas de Almodóvar?  
**g** ... he/she is interested in the actors ¿\_\_\_\_\_ los actores?

## F Tú and asking questions

To make a question in Spanish, you change the intonation by making your voice rise towards the end of the sentence:

- ¿Estás cansado? Are you tired?  
 ¿Tú descansas? Are you having a rest?  
 ¿Te interesa el fútbol? Are you interested in football?  
 ¿Recuerdas el día cuando ...? Do you remember the day when ...?

You can also make a question by changing the order, putting the verb first and then the subject pronoun **tú**;

of course this is not done often because **tú** is not usually needed.

- ¿Vives tú en Madrid?  
 ¿Juegas tú al tenis?  
 ¿Prefieres tú ir al cine?  
 ¿Escuchas tú las noticias?  
 ¿Oyes tú bien?

- Do you live/Are you living in Madrid?  
 Do you play/Are you playing tennis?  
 Do you prefer to go to the cinema?  
 Do you listen/Are you listening to the news?  
 Do/Can you hear well?



Practise saying questions to get used to the sound. Remember to make your voice rise towards the end. You will probably feel silly at first, but don't worry, practice eventually makes perfect!

**VI** Practise asking your friend what he/she is going to do. Just add the **tú** form of the verb in brackets. Perhaps you could include 'tú' in some of these. It is used mostly where emphasis is needed.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>a</b> Have you got a meeting in Madrid next Tuesday?  | ¿_____ una reunión en Madrid el martes que viene? (tener) |
| <b>b</b> Are you leaving very early?                     | ¿_____ muy temprano? (salir)                              |
| <b>c</b> Are you taking the AVE?                         | ¿_____ el AVE? (coger)                                    |
| <b>d</b> Do you get in to Atocha?                        | ¿_____ a Atocha? (llegar)                                 |
| <b>e</b> Will you eat with us?                           | ¿_____ con nosotros? (cenar)                              |
| <b>f</b> Are you going back to Seville the same evening? | ¿_____ a Sevilla esa misma tarde? (volver)                |

**VII** Chatting up – imagine you have already got to the **tú** stage with somebody you are attracted to! Match the questions, then cover the right-hand side of the page and see if you can remember the Spanish translations.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>a</b> Would you like a drink?                | <b>i</b> ¿Quieres un cigarrillo?                      |
| <b>b</b> Do you prefer red or white wine?       | <b>ii</b> ¿Estás cansado/a?                           |
| <b>c</b> Do you smoke?                          | <b>iii</b> ¿Quieres algo de beber?                    |
| <b>d</b> Do you mind if I smoke?                | <b>iv</b> ¿Quieres ir a cenar a un restaurante?       |
| <b>e</b> Do you want a cigarette?               | <b>v</b> ¿Fumas?                                      |
| <b>f</b> Are you hungry?                        | <b>vi</b> ¿Prefieres el vino tinto o el vino blanco?  |
| <b>g</b> Would you like to go out to dinner?    | <b>vii</b> ¿Te importa si fumo?                       |
| <b>h</b> Are you tired?                         | <b>viii</b> ¿Tienes una media naranja?                |
| <b>i</b> Do you like sci-fi films?              | <b>ix</b> ¿Tienes hambre?                             |
| <b>j</b> Have you got a man/woman in your life? | <b>x</b> ¿Te gustan las películas de ciencia-ficción? |



Checklist: the *tú* form

You only use the **tú** form when speaking to children, teenagers, pets and people you know very well, or people who have invited you to use it.

You do not use it to older people you do not know unless invited to do so.

The **tú** form of the verb sounds different from all others, so the actual word **tú** is not normally needed.

- The **tú** form of **-ar** verbs always ends in **-as** except for **estás**, which needs an accent on the 'a'.
- The **tú** form of **-er** and **-ir** verbs always ends in **-es** except for **ir – vas**. **Ser** has an irregular form – **eres**.
- Questions are formed by changing the intonation or by inverting the verb and the pronoun when there is one.

**VIII** Write a farewell message to a boy/girl/friend you wish to 'dump'. Say what they are like, and what they do which you don't like. Use this template:

Querido/a \_\_\_\_ :

Ya no quiero ser tu novio/novia/amiga. (Say what he/she is like, perhaps two or three bad things).

No me gustas porque hablas demasiado, y \_\_\_\_ (try to list five things he/she does which you don't like).

¡Basta ya!

Adiós para siempre,

\_\_\_\_\_

### 1.2.4 Talking about someone or something else: *él/ella* and *usted*



**If you know how to use the *él/ella/usted* form, go on to the checklist on page 33.**

This form is called the third person. In English it is the *he/she/it* form of the verb. An important thing to remember is that this form is also used for **usted**, the formal word for *you*. As usual, the subject pronoun/person word is not normally used, because the verb endings are clear enough by themselves. However, **usted** is often used, especially in questions. Note that **usted** is often abbreviated to **Ud** or **Vd**.



In Spanish, there is no word for *it*. Everything is masculine or feminine. **Una casa** (a house) is feminine, so you say *she* is old; **un libro** (a book) is masculine, so you say *he* is new.

The third person form is easy to learn, as it is the same as the **tú** form but without the **-s**, except for **ser – es** (*he/she/it is*).

(tú) vas	(él/ella/usted) va
(tú) tienes	(él/ella/usted) tiene
(tú) eres	(él/ella/usted) es

### A *Él/ella/usted* and regular verbs

- The **él/ella/usted** form of **-ar** verbs ends in **-a** (like the **tú** form but without the final **-s**).  
(él/ella/usted) compra; habla; lava
- The **él/ella/usted** form of **-er** verbs ends in **-e** (again, like the **tú** form but without the final **-s**).  
(él/ella/usted) come; bebe; escoge
- The **él/ella/usted** form of **-ir** verbs also ends in **-e** (like the **tú** form but with no final **-s**).  
(él/ella/usted) sube; vive; escribe

### I Fill in the right part of the verb.

- a** Usted \_\_\_\_ muchas cartas a los periódicos. (escribir)  
**b** Enrique Iglesias \_\_\_\_ canciones en español y en inglés. (cantar)  
**c** Mi hijo \_\_\_\_ por Internet. (navegar)  
**d** Su amiguita \_\_\_\_ muchas historias de Manolito Gafotas. (leer)  
**e** Doña Encarnación \_\_\_\_ muchos mensajes por e-mail. (recibir)  
**f** Don Ángel \_\_\_\_ su casa. (vender)  
**g** La señora Pérez \_\_\_\_ comprar una casa. (desear)  
**h** El banco \_\_\_\_ dinero a sus clientes. (prestar)  
**i** El abogado \_\_\_\_ los documentos del contrato de venta. (preparar)  
**j** La señora Pérez \_\_\_\_ el documento de venta delante del abogado. (firmar)

### B *Él/ella/usted* and irregular verbs

Some of the most common, and most useful, verbs are, of course, irregular in this form – but remember, most of them are similar to the **tú** form but without the final **-s**.

infinitive	meaning	third person	meaning
estar	to be	está	he/she is/you are
ser	to be	es	he/she is/you are
ir	to go	va	he/she goes/you go

C *Él/ella/usted* and stem-changing verbs

The verbs which modify the spelling of their stem in the first and second persons do the same with **él/ella** and **usted**. Thus, the 'stretching' vowel **-e-** changes to **-ie-**, and **-o-** to **-ue-**. As before, a few have **-e-** to **-i-**, and just one has a change from **-u-** to **-ue-**.

Here are the most useful examples:

stem change	infinitive	meaning	third person	meaning
<b>e → ie</b>	pensar querer preferir	to think to want to prefer	piensa quiere prefiere	he/she thinks/you think he/she wants/you want he/she prefers/you prefer
<b>o → ue</b>	contar volver dormir	to count to return to sleep	cuenta vuelve duerme	he/she counts/you count he/she returns/you return he/she sleeps/you sleep
<b>e → i</b>	pedir	to ask for	pide	he/she asks/you ask for
<b>u → ue</b>	jugar	to play	juega	he/she plays/you play

Note that **tener** is one of these verbs: the **él** form is **tiene**.

## II Choose a verb from the list above and complete each sentence with the correct form. Then, if you are feeling adventurous, translate them into English!

- Mi amigo \_\_\_ al fútbol todos los domingos.
- Su mujer \_\_\_ que esto es excesivo.
- Le \_\_\_ un domingo sin fútbol.
- Ella no \_\_\_ con él, porque es muy egoísta.
- \_\_\_ ir a la playa con su marido.
- Pero él \_\_\_ estar con sus amigos.
- Después \_\_\_ a casa muy cansado.
- Luego \_\_\_ hasta la hora de cenar.

## III How would you say the following?

- El señor Pablos \_\_\_ madrileño. (ser)
- \_\_\_ en Madrid. (vivir)
- \_\_\_ a Algeciras. (ir)
- \_\_\_ el tren. (coger)
- \_\_\_ una noche en el tren. (pasar)
- Al día siguiente, \_\_\_ a Algeciras. (llegar)
- \_\_\_ dos grandes maletas. (tener)
- \_\_\_ sus maletas en un carrito. (poner)
- \_\_\_ a un taxi. (llamar)
- Cuando se \_\_\_, sus maletas ya no están. (volver)

D *Él/ella/usted* and reflexive verbs

Again, these are verbs in which the action ‘bounces back’ on the subject, so they need an extra ‘person word’. The reflexive pronoun for the **él/ella** and **usted** form is **se**. In the following table, all the third person forms are also used for **usted**, the formal way of expressing *you*.



This form is often used to describe an action for which there is no known subject:

Se construye un nuevo hotel en Cádiz.      A new hotel is being built in Cádiz.

Note that this avoids needing to use the passive (see below).

infinitive	meaning	third person	meaning
aburrirse	to get bored	se aburre	he/she gets/you get bored
acostarse	to go to bed	se acuesta	he/she goes/you go to bed
afeitarse	to shave	se afeita	he/she shaves/you shave
cansarse	to get tired	se cansa	he/she gets/you get tired
despertarse	to wake up	se despierta	he/she wakes up/you wake up
ducharse	to have a shower	se ducha	he/she has/you have a shower
lavarse	to wash (oneself)	se lava	he/she washes/you wash
levantarse	to get up	se levanta	he/she gets up/you get up
pasearse	to go for a walk	se pasea	he/she goes/you go for a walk
peinarse	to comb one's hair	se peina	he/she combs/you comb (hair)
secarse	to dry oneself	se seca	he/she dries/you dry (self)
sentarse	to sit down	se sienta	he/she sits/you sit down
vestirse	to get dressed	se viste	he/she gets/you get dressed

## IV What does Urbano do?

- a** \_\_\_ a las once. (despertarse)  
**b** \_\_\_ a mediodía. (levantarse)  
**c** \_\_\_ (afeitarse)  
**d** \_\_\_ ( ducharse)  
**e** \_\_\_ los dientes. (lavarse)  
**f** \_\_\_ con una toalla. (secarse)  
**g** \_\_\_ (peinarse)  
**h** \_\_\_ (vestirse)  
**i** \_\_\_ a leer el periódico. (sentarse)  
**j** \_\_\_ pronto. (aburrirse)  
**k** \_\_\_ por el parque. (pasearse)  
**l** \_\_\_ después de una hora. (cansarse)  
**m** \_\_\_ temprano. (acostarse)



### Avoidance of the passive by using the reflexive impersonally

A rather 'special' use for reflexive forms is to avoid the passive (See Section 1.8.1). For example 'Aquí se habla español' – 'Spanish spoken here' and '¡Se ha roto mi iPhone!' – 'My iPhone has broken!'. Clearly, this form can only be used for things, not people; Spanish can't speak itself, and an iPhone can't break itself, so the 'se' could almost be interpreted as 'one' ... hence the reflexive form is being used impersonally.

- V Translate the following letter to your son's former teacher, using the usted form where necessary, and the he/she/it form of the verbs for the rest of the message. Some words are provided to help you.

Dear Sr Morales,

Do you remember (recordar) my son David? He is now an engineer (ingeniero) and he works for a company (empresa) which makes (fabricar) bicycles. He loves cycling (ciclismo), so he is very happy. He has a new bicycle, and travels to work on his bike. He has a girlfriend and often (a menudo) goes for a bike-ride (pasarse en bicicleta) with her.

Best wishes,  
Mary Brown

- E Saying that somebody else likes something

As we have seen, Spanish does not really have a verb for *to like*. Instead, it uses *to please* as a sort of 'back-to-front' way of conveying the idea of liking. The thing that changes is the personal pronoun which goes in front of the verb **gustar**: **¿le gusta esta casa?** – *does he/she like ...?* (literally: *does this house please him/her?*).

To talk about liking more than one thing, the verb adds **-n**: **le gustan estas casas** – *he/she likes these houses* (literally: *these houses please him/her*).

Note that the verb agrees with the *thing liked*, which is the subject. The person liking is expressed by a pronoun. The same goes for the other similar expressions in 1.2.3, section E.

Remember also that this same form is used for **usted**, the formal word for *you*. So, to ask whether a stranger likes something:

¿Le gusta esta falda?  
¿Le gustan estos guantes?

Do you like this skirt?  
Do you like these gloves?

F Using the *usted* form

VI Your employee is slacking. Tell him/her what he/she is doing.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| a You read the paper in the morning.       | (Usted) _____ el periódico por la mañana. (leer) |
| b You go to the toilet eight times a day.  | _____ a los servicios ocho veces al día. (ir)    |
| c You take two hours for your lunch break. | Se _____ dos horas para el almuerzo. (tomar)     |
| d You sleep a good part of the afternoon.  | _____ buena parte de la tarde. (dormir)          |
| e You do the crossword in the afternoon.   | _____ el crucigrama por la tarde. (hacer)        |
| f You drink a scotch at tea break.         | _____ un whisky a la hora del té. (tomar)        |
| g You have to do something about it.       | _____ que hacer algo. (tener)                    |
| h What do you say in your defence?         | ¿Qué _____ usted en su defensa? (decir)          |

Checklist: the *él/ella/usted* form

You use the **él/ella/usted** form when you are talking about someone or something, or when addressing somebody by the formal word for *you*, **usted**.



The **él/ella/usted** form is like the **tú** form but without the final **-s**.

- The **él/ella/usted** form of regular **-ar** verbs is made by adding **-a** to the stem.
- The **él/ella/usted** form of regular **-er** verbs is made by adding **-e** to the stem.
- The **él/ella/usted** form of regular **-ir** verbs is made by adding **-e** to the stem.
- The most common irregular verbs are **estar** (**está**), **ser** (**es**) and **ir** (**va**).
- The reflexive pronoun for the **él/ella/usted** form is **se**:  
¿cómo se llama?

## 1.2.5 Talking about yourself and someone else: *nosotros/as*



**If you are not going to need to use this form, skip the rest of this section and go to the checklist on page 36, as you need to be able to recognise it when you hear it, even if you don't use it.**

You use the **nosotros/as** form (or the first person plural) where you use *we* in English, i.e. when talking about yourself and someone else: *we, my husband and I, my colleagues and I, my friend and I, Mrs Brown and I, etc.*

Note the two pronoun forms: **nosotros** for two or more men or a mixed group, and **nosotras** when *we* refers just to women. Remember that in Spanish the subject pronoun does not usually need to be expressed.

### A Verbs that are regular in the *nosotros/as* form

The **nosotros/as** form is regular in almost all verbs. It is made by adding **-amos** to the stem of **-ar** verbs, **-emos** to **-er** verbs, and **-imos** to **-ir** verbs. (Remember: the stem is made by taking the **-ar/-er/-ir** off the infinitive. See 1.1.2.) This form is *not* affected by stem changes or spelling irregularities seen in the **yo, tú** and **él/ella/usted** forms.

Note that this form is often used with the idea of *Let's ...*

¡Vamos!

Let's go!

¡Bailamos!

Let's dance!

Here are some common verbs that are regular in the **nosotros/as** form; remember that each can be used for *we ...* or *we are ...ing*:

infinitive	meaning	first person plural	meaning
cambiar	to change	cambiamos	we change
coger	to take	cogemos	we take
comer	to eat	comemos	we eat
comprender	to understand	comprendemos	we understand
escoger	to choose	escogemos	we choose
hablar	to speak	hablamos	we speak
jugar	to play	jugamos	we play
quedar	to stay	quedamos	we stay
ver	to see	vemos	we see
terminar	to finish	terminamos	we finish
trabajar	to work	trabajamos	we work

- B Verbs that are irregular in the *nosotros/as* form  
All verbs end in **-mos**. The only common verbs with an irregular **nosotros/as** form are:

ser → somos – we are

ir → vamos – we go

- I How would you say the following? Use the verbs given in brackets.

- a We are working today. \_\_\_\_\_ hoy. (trabajar)  
 b We are playing volleyball tonight. \_\_\_\_\_ al voleibol esta tarde. (jugar)  
 c We are seeing friends at 6 p.m. \_\_\_\_\_ a unos amigos a las 18h00. (ver)  
 d We are dining in a restaurant. \_\_\_\_\_ en un restaurante. (cenar)  
 e We are going home at 10 p.m. \_\_\_\_\_ a las 22h00. (regresar)  
 f We are going to León tomorrow. \_\_\_\_\_ a León mañana. (ir)  
 g We are leaving at 8 a.m. \_\_\_\_\_ a las 8h00. (salir)  
 h We arrive at 11.15 a.m. \_\_\_\_\_ a las 11h15. (llegar)  
 i We buy our tickets at the station. \_\_\_\_\_ nuestros billetes en la estación. (comprar)  
 j We have lots of suitcases. \_\_\_\_\_ muchas maletas. (tener)

- II How would you say the following in Spanish?

- a We are English. Nosotros \_\_\_\_\_ ingleses.  
 b We speak Spanish. \_\_\_\_\_ español.  
 c We are going to Spain. \_\_\_\_\_ a España.  
 d We are choosing the day. \_\_\_\_\_ el día.  
 e We are taking the train. \_\_\_\_\_ el tren.  
 f We change trains in Paris. \_\_\_\_\_ de tren en París.  
 g We understand the instructions. \_\_\_\_\_ las instrucciones.  
 h We eat in a restaurant. \_\_\_\_\_ en un restaurante.  
 i We are working overtime this evening. \_\_\_\_\_ horas extra esta tarde.  
 j We finish at 6 p.m. \_\_\_\_\_ a las 18h00.  
 k We are playing tennis later. \_\_\_\_\_ al tenis más tarde.

- C *Nosotros/as* with reflexive verbs

You should be used to these reflexive verbs by now! They're the ones in which the action 'bounces back' on the subject, so they need an extra 'person word' – the reflexive pronoun. The reflexive form is made by adding **nos** in front of the verb. Note that the reflexive pronoun is **nos** for both masculine and feminine.

(Nosotros) nos llamamos Neil y John. We are called Neil and John.

(Nosotras) nos llamamos Jean y Ruth. We are called Jean and Ruth.



infinitive	meaning	first person plural	meaning
acostarse	to go to bed	nos acostamos	we go to bed
darse prisa	to hurry	nos damos prisa	we hurry
levantarse	to get up	nos levantamos	we get up
pasearse	to go for a walk	nos paseamos	we go for a walk
separarse	to get separated	nos separamos	we get separated

### III How would you say the following?

- a** We wake up at seven o'clock. \_\_\_\_\_ a las siete. (despertarse)  
**b** We get up at eight o'clock. \_\_\_\_\_ a las ocho. (levantarse)  
**c** We go to bed at 11 p.m. \_\_\_\_\_ a las 23h00. (acostarse)  
**d** We are having a shower. \_\_\_\_\_ ( ducharse)  
**e** We are hurrying. \_\_\_\_\_ (darse prisa)  
**f** We are getting dressed. \_\_\_\_\_ (vestirse)  
**g** We are getting washed. \_\_\_\_\_ (lavarse)  
**h** We go for a walk every morning. \_\_\_\_\_ cada mañana. (pasearse)  
**i** We are getting separated. \_\_\_\_\_ (separarse)

- D** Saying that you and (an) other(s) like something  
 As we have seen, Spanish uses *to please* as a sort of 'back-to-front' way of conveying the idea of liking. To say that you and (an)other(s) like something, use **nos gusta esta playa** which literally means *this beach pleases us*.

To talk about liking more than one thing, the verb adds **-n**: **nos gustan estas naranjas** – *these oranges please us*.

For other similar 'back-to-front' expressions, see 1.2.2, section G.

Checklist: the *nosotros/as* form

- To talk about yourself and someone else (*we*), use **nosotros/as** in Spanish.
- All verbs end in **-mos**.
- Common irregular **nosotros/as** forms are: **ser** → **somos** and **ir** → **vamos**.
- The reflexive pronoun is **nos**.

### IV Match these English verbs with their Spanish counterparts.

- |                               |                 |
|-------------------------------|-----------------|
| <b>a</b> we have              | queremos        |
| <b>b</b> we are               | leemos          |
| <b>c</b> we are staying       | venimos         |
| <b>d</b> we are eating        | no comprendemos |
| <b>e</b> we can               | podemos         |
| <b>f</b> we are not coming    | somos           |
| <b>g</b> we do not understand | llegamos        |

<b>h</b> we want	quedamos
<b>i</b> we are going	tenemos
<b>j</b> we are seeing	hacemos
<b>k</b> we are leaving	no venimos
<b>l</b> we are arriving	vamos
<b>m</b> we are coming	comemos
<b>n</b> we are doing	salimos
<b>o</b> we are reading	vemos

Now cover up the Spanish and see if you can do them without help!

- V** Write an email message from you and your partner to a Mexican couple with whom you want to do a house exchange. Describe yourselves, what you do, what you like; if you wish, you could include some description of your house and town. Try to include about 10 verbs. Only use the 'nosotros' verb forms given in the tables in sections A to C except the forms for 'gustar' etc. in table G, and then the third person forms (he/she/it) for describing your house and area. When you feel confident, you could try using other verbs, modelling them on those in whichever tables are appropriate.

### 1.2.6 Talking to more than one person you know well: *vosotros/as*



**If you know about the *vosotros/as* form, go on to the checklist on page 39.**

This is the plural equivalent of the **tú** form, and is the second person plural of the verb or 'familiar plural' form: it is used to talk to more than one person whom you would address as **tú**. Note the two pronoun forms: **vosotros** for two or more men or a mixed group, and **vosotras** when *you* refers just to women. Remember: as mentioned before, exactly which Spanish form of 'you' is used varies around the Spanish-speaking world. For example, in some parts of Andalusia people use the '*ustedes*' plural form instead of '*vosotros/as*'. We are giving you the standard forms for the Spanish mainland, but there is not space here for all the variants. If you are, e.g. in South America, listen to what is used and copy it!

- A** Verbs that are regular in the *vosotros/as* form  
The **vosotros/as** form is made by adding **-áis** to the stem of **-ar** verbs, **-éis** to **-er** verbs and **-ís** to **-ir** verbs. Only two common verbs are irregular in this form, so it is very

easy to learn. As usual, the subject pronoun is normally unnecessary because the endings are so distinctive.

- |                           |                             |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ¿Habláis inglés?          | Do you speak English?       |
| ¿Tenéis un coche español? | Have you got a Spanish car? |
| ¿Vivís en España?         | Do you live in Spain?       |

**B** Verbs that are irregular in the *vosotros/as* form  
The two most common irregular **vosotros/as** forms are:

ser → sois – you are  
ir → vais – you go

Note: these are not the only *vosotros/as* forms with no accent. The *vosotros/as* form of *dar* – to give, and *ver* – to see, also have no accents: *dais*, *veis*.

**C** *Vosotros/as* and asking questions



**If you know all about asking questions, go straight on to 1.2.7.**

Questions are formed in the same way as in the **tú** and **usted** forms: by changing the intonation. Occasionally, for emphasis the pronoun is used, in which case it will usually come after the verb in a question.

¿Qué hacéis (vosotros) esta tarde? What are you doing this evening?

**I** Cover up the Spanish and see if you can ask these questions.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>a</b> Are you going to the meeting?                  | ¿Vais vosotros a la reunión?                        |
| <b>b</b> Have you got an appointment?                   | ¿Tenéis una cita?                                   |
| <b>c</b> Do you know the MD?                            | ¿Conocéis al director?                              |
| <b>d</b> Can you operate the video link-up?             | ¿Sabéis usar el aparato de videoconferencia?        |
| <b>e</b> Can you call your boss?                        | ¿Podéis llamar a vuestro jefe?                      |
| <b>f</b> Do you have to go back to the hotel?           | ¿Tenéis que volver al hotel?                        |
| <b>g</b> Do you want to use the laptop with PowerPoint? | ¿Queréis usar el ordenador portátil con PowerPoint? |
| <b>h</b> Can you (Do you) see the screen?               | ¿Veis la pantalla?                                  |
| <b>i</b> Do you take notes?                             | ¿Tomáis apuntes?                                    |
| <b>j</b> Are you making a recording?                    | ¿Estáis grabando vosotros?                          |
| <b>k</b> Are you ready?                                 | ¿Estáis listos?                                     |
| <b>l</b> Do you understand?                             | ¿Comprendéis?                                       |

D *Vosotros/as* and reflexive verbs

Here is the reflexive verb section for ‘vosotros/as’! The reflexive pronoun for the **vosotros/as** form is **os** for both masculine and feminine.

¿Os las arregláis?	Are you sorting yourselves out?
Os ocupáis del niño.	You are looking after the child.
¿A qué hora os levantáis?	What time do you get up?
¿A qué hora os acostáis?	What time do you go to bed?

## II Match the following English and Spanish phrases, then cover up the right-hand side and see if you can remember the Spanish.

a Can you remember this man?	¿Os vestís ya?
b Are you going for a walk in the park?	¿Os levantáis tarde?
c Are you getting dressed already?	¿Os despertáis temprano?
d Are you making fun of me?	¿Os acordáis de este hombre?
e Do you get up late ?	¿Os paseáis por el parque?
f Do you wake up early?	¿Os burláis de mí?

## III Write again to your new Spanish friends, telling them how to get to your house and making suggestions on the best way to travel. Use the ‘vosotros’ form except where you need to use ‘gustar’ or a third person form.

E Asking whether more than one person likes something  
As we have seen, Spanish uses ‘to please’ as a sort of ‘back-to-front’ way of conveying the idea of liking. To ask friends or relatives whether they like something, use **¿os gusta esta paella?**, which literally means *does this paella please you?*

To talk about liking more than one thing, the verb adds **-n**:  
**¿os gustan estas peras?** – *do you like these pears?*

For other similar ‘back-to-front’ expressions, see 1.2.2 section G.

Checklist: the *vosotros/as* form

- The **vosotros/as** form is used when talking to more than one person whom you would address as **tú**.
- The **vosotros/as** form of regular verbs is made by adding **-áis, -éis** or **-ís** to the stem of the infinitive.



Almost all verbs are regular.

- You are quite likely to use the **vosotros/as** form to ask questions:

¿Podéis decirme por dónde se va a ...?	Can you tell me the way to ...?
¿Sabéis ...?	Do you know (how to do something)?
¿Conocéis a la señora Jiménez?	Do you know Mrs Jiménez?
¿Dónde vivís?	Where do you live?

- Common irregular **vosotros/as** forms are: **-ser** → **sois** and **ir** → **vais**.
- The reflexive pronoun is **os**.  
¡Os levantáis temprano!      You get up early!
- Questions are formed by intonation:  
¿Tenéis coche?

### 1.2.7 Talking about other people and things: *ellos/ellas* and *ustedes*

This form is called the third person plural. In English it is the *they* form of the verb. An important thing to remember is that this form is also used for **ustedes**, the plural formal word for *you*. As usual, the subject pronoun/person word is not normally used, because the verb endings are clear enough by themselves. However, **ustedes** is often used, especially in questions. Note that **ustedes** is often abbreviated to **Uds** or **Vds**.



**If you know all about the *ellos/ellas/ustedes* form, go on to the checklist on page 43.**

#### A *Ellos/ellas/ustedes* and regular verbs

- The **ellos/ellas/ustedes** form of regular **-ar** verbs is made by adding **-an** to the stem.
- The **ellos/ellas/ustedes** form of regular **-er** verbs is made by adding **-en** to the stem.
- The **ellos/ellas/ustedes** form of regular **-ir** verbs is made by adding **-en** to the stem.

The **ellos/ellas/ustedes** form is the same as the **él/ella/usted** form, but with **-n** added. The subject pronoun is usually unnecessary, though it is often used in the case of **ustedes**, especially in questions. Where a pronoun is used for *they*, remember that **ellas** can only be used where only

women are referred to, and **ellos** is used for all males or a mixed group.

(él) estudia – he is studying → (ellos) estudian – they are studying  
(ella) charla – she is chatting → (ellas) charlan – they are chatting

(él) corre – he is running → (ellos) corren – they are running  
(ella) come – she is eating → (ellas) comen – they are eating

(él) duerme – he is asleep → (ellos) duermen – they are asleep  
(ella) sale – she is going out → (ellas) salen – they are going out



Remember, you only use **ellas** if all the people (or things) referred to are feminine. If there is one male in the group, however many females there are, you have to use **ellos**.



There is a rather special way the 'they' (third person plural) form is used to avoid the need for the passive form. An easy example to remember is 'dicen que...' – it is said that...', or more accurately 'they say that...'. So, instead of using the passive form, Spanish does the same as English and uses the impersonal 'they...'.  
 Cervantes College

### B *Ellos/ellas/ustedes* and irregular verbs

These are in fact quite straightforward, because they too are like the **él/ella/usted** form but with **-n** added. The only verb with a completely irregular **ellos/ellas/ustedes** form is **ser**, as shown in the following table.

infinitive	meaning	3rd person singular	3rd person plural	meaning
estar	to be	está	están	they/you are
ser	to be	es	son	they/you are
ir	to go	va	van	they/you go

### C *Ellos/ellas/ustedes* and stem-changing verbs

The verbs which modify the spelling of their stem in the singular forms do the same with **ellos/ellas** and **ustedes**. Thus, the 'stretching' vowel **-e-** changes to **-ie-**, and **-o-** to **-ue-**. As before, a few have **-e-** to **-i-**, and just one has a change from **-u-** to **-ue-**.

Here are the most useful examples:

stem change	infinitive	meaning	3rd pers. plural	meaning
<b>e → ie</b>	pe <b>n</b> sar que <b>r</b> er pre <b>f</b> erir	to think to want to prefer	pi <b>en</b> san qu <b>ie</b> ren pref <b>ie</b> ren	they think/you think they want/you want they prefer/you prefer
<b>o → ue</b>	en <b>co</b> ntrar vol <b>v</b> er dorm <b>ir</b>	to find to return to sleep	en <b>cu</b> en <b>tr</b> an v <b>ue</b> lven d <b>ue</b> rmen	they find/you find they return/you return they sleep/you sleep
<b>e → i</b>	pe <b>d</b> ir	to ask for	pi <b>d</b> en	they ask/you ask for
<b>u → ue</b>	ju <b>g</b> ar	to play	ju <b>ue</b> gan	they play/you play

Note that **tener** is one of these verbs: the **ellos/ellas/ustedes** form is **tienen**.



Choose the verbs you think you may find useful and look for ways to remember them.

**I** Choose a verb from the list above and complete each sentence with the correct form. Then, if you are feeling adventurous, translate them into English!

- a Mis amigos \_\_\_\_ al tenis todos los sábados.
- b Sus mujeres \_\_\_\_ que es una pérdida de tiempo.
- c Ellas \_\_\_\_ un poco de ayuda en casa.
- d Ellas no \_\_\_\_ tiempo para divertirse.
- e \_\_\_\_ ir de tiendas con sus maridos.
- f Pero ellos \_\_\_\_ pasar el día con sus amigos.
- g Después \_\_\_\_ a casa cansadísimos.
- h Por eso \_\_\_\_ hasta la hora de cenar.

**II** What is happening? Fill in the correct form of the verbs.

- a Los señores Pérez \_\_\_\_ ir de compras. (querer)
- b \_\_\_\_ un coche nuevo. (tener)
- c \_\_\_\_ al hipermercado. (ir)
- d \_\_\_\_ el coche en el aparcamiento. (dejar)
- e \_\_\_\_ sus compras. (hacer)
- f \_\_\_\_ del hipermercado. (salir)
- g Ya no \_\_\_\_ su coche. (encontrar)
- h Lo \_\_\_\_ por todas partes. (buscar)
- i No lo \_\_\_\_ . (ver)
- j \_\_\_\_ a la policía. (llamar)

D *Ellos/ellas/ustedes* and reflexive verbs

As with every ‘person’ of the verb, there are reflexive verbs. The reflexive pronoun for the **ellos/ellas** and **ustedes** form is **se**. In the following table, all the third person forms are also used for **ustedes**, the formal way of expressing *you* in the plural.



This form is often used to describe an action for which there is no known subject:

Se construyen barcos en Cádiz.      Ships are built in Cádiz.

infinitive	meaning	third person plural	meaning
aburrirse	to get bored	se aburren	they/you get bored
acostarse	to go to bed	se acuestan	they/you go to bed
cansarse	to get tired	se cansan	they/you get tired
despertarse	to wake up	se despiertan	they/you wake up
ducharse	to have a shower	se duchan	they/you have a shower
irse	to go (away)	se van	they/you go (away)
lavarse	to wash (oneself)	se lavan	they/you wash
levantarse	to get up	se levantan	they/you get up
prepararse	to get ready	se preparan	they/you get ready
secarse	to dry oneself	se secan	they/you dry (self)
vestirse	to get dressed	se visten	they/you get dressed

### III What do friends Francesca and Virginia do on their night out?

- a** \_\_\_\_ (despertarse)  
**b** \_\_\_\_ (levantarse)  
**c** \_\_\_\_ (ducharse)  
**d** \_\_\_\_ (prepararse)  
**e** \_\_\_\_ (salir)  
**f** \_\_\_\_ a una bodega. (ir)  
**g** Sus amigos no \_\_\_\_ (llegar)  
**h** \_\_\_\_ (aburrirse)  
**i** \_\_\_\_ (irse)





### Avoidance of the passive by using the reflexive impersonally

As we saw in Section 1.2.4.D, a rather 'special' use for reflexive forms is to avoid the passive (see Section 1.8.1). For example 'se frien las patatas con un poco de ajo' – 'the potatoes are fried with a bit of garlic' and 'se abrieron las tiendas a las nueve' – 'the shops opened at nine'. Of course this form can only be used for things, not people; potatoes can't fry themselves, and shops can't open themselves, so the 'se' could almost be interpreted as 'one' ... hence the reflexive form is being used *impersonally*.

### E Saying that other people like something

As we have already seen, Spanish has no verb for *to like*, and instead uses *to please* as a 'back-to-front' way of expressing the idea of liking. The thing that changes is the personal pronoun which goes in front of the verb **gustar**: **¿Les gusta esta casa?** *Do they/you like this house?* (literally: *Does this house please them/you?*).

To talk about liking more than one thing, the verb adds **-n**: **¡Sí, les gustan estas casas.** *Yes, they/you like these houses.* (literally: *These houses please them/you.*)

The verb **gustar** agrees with the *thing liked*, which is the subject, and the person liking is expressed by a pronoun. The same goes for the other similar expressions in 1.2.2 section G. Remember also that this same form is used for **ustedes**, the formal word for *you* in the plural. So to ask whether other people like something, or to ask strangers whether they like something:

¿Les gusta este hotel?  
¿Les gustan estas sillas?

Do they/you like this hotel?  
Do they/you like these chairs?

### F Using the *ustedes* form

#### IV You are a tourist guide. Explain to your group of tourists what they need to do.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>a</b> You get your room key from reception. | (Vds) ____ sus llaves en recepción. (obtener) |
| <b>b</b> You go to the dining room for dinner. | ____ al comedor para la cena. (ir)            |
| <b>c</b> You can have a drink in the bar.      | ____ tomar algo de beber en el bar. (poder)   |
| <b>d</b> You need to get to bed early.         | ____ acostarse temprano. (necesitar)          |

- e** You must get up at 7. \_\_\_\_\_ que levantarse a las 7.  
(tener)
- f** You must have a good breakfast. \_\_\_\_\_ desayunar bien. (deber)
- g** You will board the coach at 8 o'clock. \_\_\_\_\_ al autocar a las 8. (subir)
- h** Tomorrow you travel to Málaga. Mañana \_\_\_\_\_ a Málaga. (viajar)

**V** Imagine you are writing a letter to a parenting magazine about your twin children; they are giving you quite a few headaches! In describing them and what they do, use the verb forms in tables in sections A to D; of course if you are confident about manipulating verbs, you can use other verbs, but always in the 'they' form.

Checklist: *ellos/ellas/ustedes* form

- You use the **ellos/ella/ustedes** form when you are talking about people or things, or when addressing somebody by the formal word for *you* in the plural, **ustedes**.



The **ellos/ellas/ustedes** form is like the **él/ella/usted** form with a final **-n**.

- The **ellos/ellas/ustedes** form of regular **-ar** verbs is made by adding **-an** to the stem.
- The **ellos/ellas/ustedes** form of regular **-er** verbs is made by adding **-en** to the stem.
- The **ellos/ellas/ustedes** form of regular **-ir** verbs is made by adding **-en** to the stem.
- The most common irregular verbs are **estar (están)**, **ser (son)** and **ir (van)**.
- The reflexive pronoun for the **ellos/ellas/ustedes** form is **se**: **¿cómo se llaman?**

### 1.2.8 ► **Fast track:** present tense

Spanish verbs change their endings according to the person who is doing them. The endings all look and sound different, so in Spanish you don't usually need to use the personal pronoun.

There are a few irregular verbs and, unfortunately, some of them are useful everyday verbs, but you probably already know some of these.

## Regular verbs

• **-ar** verbs

Most Spanish verbs are **-ar** verbs.

The regular endings for **-ar** verbs are **-o**; **-as**; **-a**; **-amos**; **-áis**; **-an**.

All verbs based on foreign words or on other Spanish words are **-ar** verbs. e.g. **chutar**, **tuítear** (sometimes **twittear**).

Most **-ar** verbs are regular, i.e. they follow the same pattern.

• **-er** verbs

There are nowhere near as many **-er** verbs as there are **-ar** verbs.

The regular endings for **-er** verbs are **-o**; **-es**; **-e**; **-emos**; **-éis**; **-en**.

Most **-er** verbs are regular, i.e. they follow the same pattern.



Try to remember a phrase you might use, which includes a word you are trying to remember, e.g. **Siempre bebemos vino tinto**.

• **-ir** verbs

There are not very many **-ir** verbs.

The regular endings for **-ir** verbs are **-o**; **-es**; **-e**; **-imos**; **-ís**; **-en**.

Most **-ir** verbs are regular, i.e. they follow the same pattern.

Each ending sounds different, so the person word is not usually needed.

## Irregular verbs

Here are some of the most useful irregular verbs:

<b>ser</b> – to be	<b>ir</b> – to go	<b>haber</b> – to have*
soy	voy	he
eres	vas	has
es	va	ha
somos	vamos	hemos
sois	vais	habéis
son	van	han

\* only used to form the perfect and other compound tenses, never to express possession.

These two verbs behave mostly like **-ar** verbs, but have a **yo** form ending in **-oy**:

<b>dar</b> – to give	<b>estar</b> – to be
<b>doy</b>	<b>estoy</b> (note the accents on the other persons of <b>estar</b> )
das	estás
da	está
damos	estamos
dais	estáis
dan	están

These two also have an irregular **yo** form:

<b>saber</b> – to know	<b>ver</b> – to see
<b>sé</b>	<b>veo</b>
sabes	ves
sabe	ve
sabemos	vemos
sabéis	veis
saben	ven

The following are some other verbs which have an irregularity just in the **yo** form. In each case the **-g-** serves to ‘strengthen’ the sound:

<b>caer</b>	<b>hacer</b>	<b>oír</b>	<b>poner</b>	<b>salir</b>	<b>traer</b>	<b>valer</b>
ca <b>igo</b>	ha <b>go</b>	oi <b>go</b>	pon <b>go</b>	sal <b>go</b>	tra <b>igo</b>	val <b>go</b>
caes	haces	oyes*	pones	sales	traes	vales
cae	hace	oye*	pone	sale	trae	vale
caemos	hacemos	oímos	ponemos	salimos	traemos	valemos
caéis	hacéis	oís	ponéis	salís	traéis	valéis
caen	hacen	oyen*	ponen	salen	traen	valen

\* note the change from **i** → **y** in some forms of **oír**



All verbs based on these perform in the same way, e.g. **componer**, **deshacer**.

Several verbs have a different way of strengthening the **yo** form, or of changing its spelling to keep the same consonant sound:

<b>conocer</b>	<b>conducir</b>	<b>coger</b>
cono <b>zco</b>	condu <b>zco</b>	co <b>jo</b>
conoces	conduces	coges

conocer	conducir	coger
conoce	conduce	coge
conocemos	conducimos	cogemos
conocéis	conducís	cogéis
conocen	conducen	cogen



Verbs based on these, such as **reconocer**, **reducir** and **recoger**, behave in the same way.

### Stem-changing verbs

The following are examples of verbs which have a stem spelling change in person forms where the stress falls on the stem:

e → ie			o → ue			e → i	u → ue
pensar	querer	preferir	contar	volver	dormir	pedir	jugar
pienso	quiero	prefiero	cuento	vuelvo	duermo	pido	juego
piensas	quieres	prefieres	cuentas	vuelves	duermes	pides	juegas
piensa	quiere	prefiere	cuenta	vuelve	duerme	pide	juega
pensamos	queremos	preferimos	contamos	volvemos	dormimos	pedimos	jugamos
pensáis	queréis	preferís	contáis	volvéis	dormís	pedís	jugáis
piensan	quieren	prefieren	cuentan	vuelven	duermen	piden	juegan



Notice how the stem spelling only changes in person forms 1, 2, 3 and 6, the forms in which the stress is on the 'stretchy vowel'; you could call them '1-2-3-6 verbs' to remind you which forms have this change. If you arrange them like this ...



... you could even call them 'boot verbs'! The forms inside the boot-shape change, those outside do not. In fact, as with these verbs, the **nosotros/as** and **vosotros/as** forms of almost all verbs are regular, i.e. they are close to the infinitive form.

These verbs have an irregular **yo** form as well as stem spelling changes:

<b>e → ie</b>		<b>e → i</b>
<b>t</b> ener	<b>v</b> enir	<b>d</b> ecir
tengo	vengo	<b>d</b> igo
<b>ie</b> nes	<b>vi</b> enes	<b>d</b> ices
<b>ie</b> ne	<b>vi</b> ene	<b>d</b> ice
tenemos	venimos	decimos
tenéis	veníis	decís
<b>ie</b> nen	<b>vi</b> enen	<b>d</b> icen

**I** You are talking about yourself. Use the verbs in brackets.

- a** (Yo) \_\_\_\_ una reunión con uno de mis colegas. (tener)  
**b** \_\_\_\_ listo/a. (estar)  
**c** \_\_\_\_ al centro. (ir)  
**d** \_\_\_\_ el metro. (coger)  
**e** \_\_\_\_ en la estación de Plaza de Toros. (bajar)  
**f** \_\_\_\_ del metro. (salir)  
**g** \_\_\_\_ la plaza. (cruzar)  
**h** \_\_\_\_ a mi colega delante de la Plaza de Toros. (esperar)  
**i** No \_\_\_\_ esperar mucho. (querer)  
**j** Después de media hora \_\_\_\_ al hotel. (volver)

**II** Still using the same sentences, ask someone you know really well the same things. Use the **tú** form. For example:

¿Tienes (tú) una reunión con uno de tus colegas?

- a** ¿\_\_\_\_ (tú) una reunión con uno de tus colegas? (tener)  
**b** ¿\_\_\_\_ listo/a? (estar)  
**c** ¿\_\_\_\_ al centro? (ir)  
**d** ¿\_\_\_\_ el metro? (coger)  
**e** ¿\_\_\_\_ en la estación de Plaza de Toros? (bajar)  
**f** ¿\_\_\_\_ del metro? (salir)  
**g** ¿\_\_\_\_ la plaza? (cruzar)  
**h** ¿\_\_\_\_ a tu colega delante de la Plaza de Toros? (esperar)  
**i** ¿No \_\_\_\_ esperar mucho? (querer)  
**j** Después de media hora ¿\_\_\_\_ al hotel? (volver)

**III** Now report back in the singular, saying he/she does it. Choose the correct verb from the three in brackets. For example:

(Él/Ella) *tiene* una reunión con uno de sus colegas.

- a** (Él/Ella) \_\_\_\_ una reunión con uno de sus colegas. (tienen/están/salen)  
**b** \_\_\_\_ listo/a. (pone/está/sube)

- c** \_\_\_ al centro. (va/es/vale)  
**d** \_\_\_ el metro. (cog/reconoce/compra)  
**e** \_\_\_ en la estación de Plaza de Toros. (llega/baj/da)  
**f** \_\_\_ del metro. (sale/sube/sabe)  
**g** \_\_\_ la plaza. (trabaja/corre/cruza)  
**h** \_\_\_ a su colega delante de la Plaza de Toros. (escucha/mira/espera)  
**i** No \_\_\_ esperar mucho. (puede/quiere/vuelve)  
**j** Después de media hora \_\_\_ al hotel. (vuelve/hace/coge)

**IV** Now you are talking about yourself and a partner: say we do (or don't do) the same things. For example:

(Nosotros/as) *tenemos* una reunión con uno de nuestros colegas.

- a** (Nosotros/as) \_\_\_ una reunión con uno de nuestros colegas.  
**b** \_\_\_ listos/as.  
**c** \_\_\_ al centro.  
**d** \_\_\_ el metro.  
**e** \_\_\_ en la estación de Plaza de Toros.  
**f** \_\_\_ del metro.  
**g** \_\_\_ la plaza.  
**h** \_\_\_ a nuestro colega delante de la Plaza de Toros.  
**i** No \_\_\_ esperar mucho.  
**j** Después de media hora \_\_\_ al hotel.

**V** Using the same sentences, ask some other friends the same things. Use the **vosotros/as** form. For example:

¿*Tenéis* (vosotros/as) una reunión con uno de vuestros colegas?

- a** ¿\_\_\_ (vosotros/as) una reunión con uno de vuestros colegas? (tener)  
**b** ¿\_\_\_ listos/as? (estar)  
**c** ¿\_\_\_ al centro? (ir)  
**d** ¿\_\_\_ el metro? (coger)  
**e** ¿\_\_\_ en la estación de Plaza de Toros? (bajar)  
**f** ¿\_\_\_ del metro? (salir)  
**g** ¿\_\_\_ la plaza? (cruzar)  
**h** ¿\_\_\_ a vuestro colega delante de la Plaza de Toros? (esperar)  
**i** ¿No \_\_\_ esperar mucho? (querer)  
**j** Después de media hora ¿\_\_\_ al hotel? (volver)

**VI** Finally, say that they do it. Choose the correct verb. For example:

(Ellos/Ellas) *tienen* una reunión con uno de sus colegas.

- a** (Ellos/Ellas) \_\_\_ una reunión con uno de sus colegas. (tiene/está/sale)  
**b** \_\_\_ listos/as. (están son suben)  
**c** \_\_\_ al centro. (van ponen valen)  
**d** \_\_\_ el metro. (cogen reconocen saben)  
**e** \_\_\_ en la estación de Plaza de Toros. (llegan están bajan)

- f** \_\_\_\_ del metro. (salen suben compran)  
**g** \_\_\_\_ la plaza. (escuchan miran cruzan)  
**h** \_\_\_\_ a su colega delante de la Plaza de Toros. (trabajan corren esperan)  
**i** No \_\_\_\_ esperar mucho. (pueden quieren cogen)  
**j** Después de media hora \_\_\_\_ al hotel. (vuelven pueden cogen)

## VII Translate the following message:

Hi Juanita,

How are you? I am well, but my life is very busy. I work hard during the day in the office, then when I arrive home at 5 o'clock the fun starts! The children finish school at 4 o'clock, so they have to walk home. First I prepare dinner, then I have to wash the dishes because the dish-washer is broken. My husband arrives home late from work, so he can't help! He takes the dog for a walk while I help the children with their homework. We put the children to bed at 9, then sometimes we watch the TV... and usually we fall asleep. We go to bed at 11, and try to sleep well before another busy day!

Love,  
Jackie

# 1.3

## Saying 'no', asking questions and telling someone what to do: negatives, interrogatives and imperatives



**If you know what these are, go on to 1.3.1.**

- The **negative** is used to say *no* you *don't* do something, you *haven't* got something or to tell someone *not* to do something. A negative sentence is a sentence with a *no*, *not* or *don't* in it.
- The **interrogative** is used to ask questions.
- The **imperative** is used to give orders, directions or instructions: to tell someone what to do or what not to do!

### 1.3.1 Negatives: how to say what you don't do



**If you know how to use no ..., go on to 1.3.2.**

To say you don't do something, you put **no** in front of the verb.

No sé.

I don't know.



**No** means *not*, as above, and also *No*, ... so you often see and hear it twice at the beginning of a sentence:

No, no sé.

No, I don't know.



**I** Say you/they don't do these things by putting **no** in front of the verb. Say the sentences aloud to get used to the sound.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>a</b> They don't drink wine.        | _____ vino. (beber)                                 |
| <b>b</b> I don't often write letters.  | _____ cartas a menudo. (escribir)                   |
| <b>c</b> She doesn't read her e-mails. | _____ su correo electrónico. (leer)                 |
| <b>d</b> We don't buy magazines.       | _____ revistas. (comprar)                           |
| <b>e</b> I don't know!                 | ¡_____! (saber)                                     |
| <b>f</b> He can't find the entrance.   | _____ encontrar la entrada. (poder)                 |
| <b>g</b> They are not coming tonight.  | _____ esta tarde. (venir)                           |
| <b>h</b> I don't want to go.           | _____ ir. (querer)                                  |
| <b>i</b> We don't like going there.    | _____ ir allí. (gustar – be careful with this one!) |
| <b>j</b> You don't eat garlic!         | ¡_____ el ajo! (comer – tú)                         |

### 1.3.2 Interrogatives: asking questions

There are four ways of asking a question. You can:

- make a statement and change the intonation;
- invert the subject and the verb where a subject pronoun is used;
- use a question word, and then the verb as normal;
- use a question word and invert the subject and verb where a subject pronoun is used.

In the following sections, read the examples and then cover up the English and see if you understand the meanings; then cover up the Spanish and see if you can put the questions back into Spanish. Note that questions *always* start with an inverted question mark in written Spanish.

#### A Changing the intonation

This is the easiest and most used way to ask a question.

Remember, you have to use a rising tone towards the end of the question, which is what identifies a question when spoken. In written form, the inverted question mark at the start of the sentence shows that a question is on the way. Practise saying them aloud.

- |                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| ¿Entiendes?                     | You understand?                        |
| ¿Habla inglés?                  | Do you speak English?                  |
| ¿Conocéis el Hotel Soberano?    | You know the Hotel Soberano?           |
| ¿Miguel sabe latín?             | Does Miguel know Latin?                |
| ¿Este tren va a Ciudad Rodrigo? | Is this train going to Ciudad Rodrigo? |

## B Inverting the subject and the verb

This can be done where the subject pronoun is used for extra emphasis, being most common with **usted** and **ustedes**. It can also be done where a name or noun is used as the subject.

¿Entiendes tú?	Do you understand?
¿Habla usted inglés?	Do you speak English?
¿Conocéis vosotros el Hotel Soberano?	Do you know the Hotel Soberano?
¿Sabe Miguel latín?	Does Miguel know Latin?
¿Va este tren a Cádiz?	Is this train going to Cádiz?

## C Using a question word followed by the verb as normal

¿Qué dices?	What are you saying?
¿Por qué hace esto?	Why are you doing this?
¿Dónde os alojáis?	Where are you staying?
¿Cómo van a Palencia?	How are they going to Palencia?
¿A quién conoce?	Whom do you know?
¿Cuántos euros tenéis?	How many euros do you have?
El tren, ¿cuándo llega a Cádiz?	When does the train arrive at Cádiz?

Notice where the inverted question mark goes in the last example – it goes at the beginning of the actual question, so just in front of the question word (interrogative).

## D Using a question word and inverting the subject and verb

¿Qué dices tú?	What are you saying?
¿Por qué hace usted esto?	Why are you doing this?
¿Dónde os alojáis vosotros?	Where are you staying?
¿Cómo van ellos a Palencia?	How are they going to Palencia?
¿A quién conoce usted?	Whom do you know?
¿Cuántos euros tenéis vosotros?	How many euros do you have?
¿Cuándo llega el tren a Cádiz?	When does the train arrive at Cádiz?

Note that *all* question words have an accent.

## I Use method B to turn these statements into questions. For each question you will need to supply a 'subject', either '*los señores Blanco*' or '*ellos*'. For example:

¿Viven los señores Blanco en Madrid?

- a** Los señores Blanco viven en Madrid.
- b** Salen de vacaciones.
- c** Cogen el tren.
- d** Van a la Costa del Sol.

- e** Tienen un apartamento allí.  
**f** Alquilan un coche.  
**g** Juegan al golf.  
**h** Hacen esquí acuático.  
**i** Tienen unos amigos en Fuengirola.  
**j** Por la tarde cenan en un restaurante.

**II** Use method D with these question words. Once again, you'll need to supply a subject in each one, as in exercise I. For example:

¿Adónde van ellos?

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>a</b> Where are they going?                   | ¿Adónde ____? (ir)                              |
| <b>b</b> When are they leaving?                  | ¿Cuándo ____? (salir)                           |
| <b>c</b> How are they travelling?                | ¿Cómo ____? (viajar)                            |
| <b>d</b> Why are they in Barcelona?              | ¿Por qué ____ en Barcelona?<br>(estar)          |
| <b>e</b> What are they doing?                    | ¿Qué ____? (hacer)                              |
| <b>f</b> Who are they meeting?                   | ¿Con quién ____ una reunión?<br>(tener)         |
| <b>g</b> How long are they staying at the hotel? | ¿Cuánto tiempo se ____ en el hotel?<br>(quedar) |

### 1.3.3 Imperatives: giving orders, directions or instructions



**If you know about the imperative, go on to 1.3.4.**

The imperative is the part of the verb you use when you are telling someone to do something, or giving instructions or an order: *Watch out! Stop! Turn left!* etc.

In Spanish, since there are four ways of saying *you*, there are four ways of telling somebody what to do!

You use the **tú** form only when speaking to someone you know well or someone younger than you, and the **vosotros/as** form for two or more people you know well.

You use the **usted** form for a stranger or somebody senior to you, and the **ustedes** form for two or more strangers.

Look at these examples. Some are for **tú** and some for **usted**. You will probably have heard some of these before. Which ones do you know already?

- |                 |                       |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| Come on!        | ¡Venga!               |
| Go!             | ¡Anda!                |
| Cross the road! | ¡Cruce la calle!      |
| Turn left!      | ¡Gire a la izquierda! |
| Listen!         | ¡Escucha!             |

Wait! ¡Espera!  
 Hold the line! (telephone) ¡No cuelgue!  
 Hurry up! ¡Date prisa!

### A Giving advice or instructions in the **tú** form

The **tú** imperative is used to give advice, instructions and orders to a single family member or friend. This is easy to form: simply take the **-s** off the normal **tú** form of the verb.

Buy a new tie! ¡Compra una corbata nueva!  
 Drink Rioja wine! ¡Bebe vino de Rioja!  
 Get in carefully! ¡Sube con cuidado!

The following table gives examples of regular, stem-changing and irregular imperatives in the **tú** form, as well as a reflexive verb.

infinitive	meaning	tú imperative	meaning
hablar vender escribir	to speak to sell to write	¡habla! ¡vende! ¡escribe!	speak! sell! write!
contar volver pedir	to count to return to ask for	¡cuenta! ¡vuelve! ¡pide!	count! return! ask for!
decir hacer ir ser poner tener venir salir	to say to do/make to go to be to put to have to come to leave/go out	¡di! ¡haz! ¡ve! ¡sé! ¡pon! ¡ten! ¡ven! ¡sal!	say! do!/make! go! be! put! have! come! leave!/go out!
callarse	to shut up	¡cállate!	shut up!

Notice how, in the case of reflexive verbs, the reflexive pronoun is tacked onto the end of the imperative verb form and an accent is placed strategically to keep the stress in the right place.

A special form of the verb is used for giving negative commands in the **tú** form. This is easy to form: add **-es** to the stem of **-ar** verbs, and **-as** to the stem of **-er** and **-ir** verbs.

¡No te preocupes! Don't worry!  
 ¡No comas eso! Don't eat that!  
 ¡No subas la escalera! Don't go up the stairs!

Note how the reflexive pronoun goes in front of the negative imperative.

For irregular stems for these negative commands, see section C. You will need to do this for B and F.

**I** Tell a friend or relative to do or not to do these things.

- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| <b>a</b> Shut up!         | ¡____! (callarse) (add reflexive pronoun to end: accent needed?) |
| <b>b</b> Don't sit down!  | ¡No ____! (sentarse)   |
| <b>c</b> Be careful!      | ¡____ cuidado! (tener)   |
| <b>d</b> Give me that!    | ¡____ me eso! (dar)  |
| <b>e</b> Be good!         | ¡____ bueno/a! (ser)   |
| <b>f</b> Don't come here! | ¡____ aquí! (venir)  |
| <b>g</b> Get out of here! | ¡____ de aquí! (salir)   |
| <b>h</b> Get up!          | ¡____! (levantarse)  |

**B** Giving advice or instructions in the *vosotros/as* form

For giving orders and instructions to more than one relative or friend, use the *vosotros* imperative. This is based on the infinitive, replacing final **-r** with **-d** (for a change, there are no irregulars!):

¡Esperad!      Wait!      ¡Escuchad!      Listen!

A special form of the verb is used for giving negative commands. This is easy to form: add **-éis** to the stem of **-ar** verbs, and **-áis** to the stem of **-er** and **-ir** verbs.

¡No os preocupéis!	Don't worry!
¡No bebáis eso!	Don't drink that!
¡No subáis la escalera!	Don't go up the stairs!

For irregular stems for these negative commands, see section C.

**C** Giving advice or instructions in the *usted* form

The **usted** form of address is the one most likely to be used to give advice, instructions and orders to a stranger or in public places. A special form of the verb is used for this: the subjunctive. In fact you have already seen parts of this: the 'special forms' mentioned above. This is easy to form: add **-e** to the stem of **-ar** verbs, and **-a** to the stem of **-er** and **-ir** verbs. The same verb form is used for negative commands:

¡No compre este coche!	Don't buy this car!
¡Beba locaCola!	Drink LocaCola!
¡Suba con cuidado!	Get in carefully!

Some irregular verbs have a special stem based on the irregular **yo** form, and others have the stem change seen in the present tense. Note that, in the case of reflexive verbs, the reflexive pronoun is added to the end of the imperative verb form and an accent is added to keep the stress in the right place.

to sit down – sentarse → ¡séntese! – sit down!

Here are some examples of regular, stem-changing, irregular and reflexive imperatives in the **usted** form:

infinitive	meaning	usted imperative form	meaning
hablar	to speak	¡hable!	speak!
comer	to eat	¡coma!	eat!
escribir	to write	¡escriba!	write!
contar	to count	¡cuente!	count!
volver	to return	¡vuelva!	return!
dormir	to sleep	¡duerma!	sleep!
decir	to say/tell	¡diga!	tell me!
hacer	to do	¡haga!	do!
introducir	to put in/ enter/introduce	¡introduzca!	put in!/ enter!/introduce!
ir	to go	¡vaya!	go!
oír	to hear/listen	¡oiga!	listen!
venir	to come	¡venga!	come!
acostarse	to go to bed	¡acuéstese!	go to bed!

## II What do these mean? Match them up.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>a</b> Enter your PIN.                          | i Firme aquí.                              |
| <b>b</b> Pull.                                    | ii Pulse.                                  |
| <b>c</b> Wait for the tone.                       | iii Espere.                                |
| <b>d</b> Speak into the microphone.               | iv Introduzca su número secreto.           |
| <b>e</b> Sign here.                               | v Cancele su billete<br>(de autobús/tren). |
| <b>f</b> Cancel your (bus/train) ticket.          | vi Por favor, no cuelgue.                  |
| <b>g</b> Press.                                   | vii Oiga, por favor.                       |
| <b>h</b> Please hold the line<br>(don't hang up). | viii Diga/Dígame.                          |
| <b>i</b> Wait.                                    | ix Pulse el botón.                         |
| <b>j</b> Press the button.                        | x Tire.                                    |
| <b>k</b> Listen, please.<br>(when making a call)  | xi Espere el tono.                         |

**I** Hello. (tell me – when answering phone) (also used for *excuse me/can you tell me*)

xii Hable cerca del micrófono.

**III** Tick the expressions in exercise II that you know already. Highlight any which are different from what you would have expected and choose three new ones to try to remember.

**IV** Your assistant is not well. Give him/her some advice.

- |                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| <b>a</b> You look ill.         | _____ enfermo/a. (parecer – not an imperative for this one) |
| <b>b</b> Go to see the doctor. | _____ a ver al médico. (ir)                                 |
| <b>c</b> Drink more water.     | _____ más agua. (beber)                                     |
| <b>d</b> Eat more fruit.       | _____ más fruta. (comer)                                    |
| <b>e</b> Walk to work more.    | _____ andando al trabajo. (venir)                           |
| <b>f</b> Smoke less.           | _____ menos. (fumar)  |
| <b>g</b> Go jogging.           | _____ footing. (hacer)                                      |
| <b>h</b> Get some fresh air.   | _____ un poco de aire fresco. (tomar)                       |
| <b>i</b> Go to bed earlier.    | _____ más temprano. (acostarse)                             |
| <b>j</b> Sleep well.           | _____ bien. (dormir)  |

**D** Giving advice or instructions in the *ustedes* form

The **ustedes** form of address is the one most likely to be used to give advice, instructions and orders to strangers or in public places. A special form of the verb is used for this: the subjunctive. This is easy to form: add **-en** to the stem of **-ar** verbs, and **-an** to the stem of **-er** and **-ir** verbs.

Buy your SEAT Ibiza now!	¡Compren su SEAT Ibiza ahora!
Drink CocaLocal!	¡Beban CocaLocal!
Suffer in silence!	¡Sufran en silencio!

Some irregular verbs have a special stem based on the irregular **yo** form, and others have the stem change seen in the present tense.

Note that, in the case of reflexive verbs, the reflexive pronoun is added to the end of the imperative, and an accent is added to keep the stress in the right place.

to sit down – sentarse → ¡siéntense! – sit down!

This same form of the verb is used for giving negative commands:

¡No se sienten!	Don't sit down!
¡No coman en este restaurante!	Don't eat at this restaurant!
¡No escriban en el muro!	Don't write on the wall!

Here are some examples of regular, irregular, stem-changing and reflexive imperatives in the **ustedes** form (NB: the gaps are there for a reason!):

infinitive	meaning	ustedes imperative form	meaning
hablar comer escribir	to speak to eat to write	____ ____ ____	speak! eat! write!
contar volver dormir	to count to return to sleep	¡cuenten! ¡vuelvan! ¡duerman!	count! return! ____
decir hacer introducir	to say/tell to do to put in/enter/ introduce	¡digan! ¡hagan! ¡introduzcan!	tell me! do! put in!/enter!/ introduce!
ir oír venir	to go to hear/listen to come	¡vayan! ¡oigan! ¡vengan!	____ listen! ____
acostarse	to go to bed	¡acuéstense!	____

**V** Fill in the gaps in the table above! Highlight any forms which are different from what you would have expected and choose three new ones to try to remember.

**VI** How would you give these instructions? If you are likely to need to use the **tú** form (¡Come las verduras! ¡Ve a la cama!) practise this form; otherwise concentrate on the **usted** form. Both sets of answers are given.

- a** ¡\_\_\_\_ a la izquierda! (girar)  
**b** ¡\_\_\_\_ la escalera! (subir)  
**c** ¡\_\_\_\_ la primera calle a la derecha! (coger)  
**d** ¡\_\_\_\_ todo recto! (seguir)  
**e** ¡\_\_\_\_ hasta el próximo semáforo! (ir)  
**f** ¡\_\_\_\_ a la derecha y a la izquierda! (mirar)  
**g** ¡\_\_\_\_ la calle! (cruzar)  
**h** ¡\_\_\_\_ el autobús! (coger)  
**i** ¡\_\_\_\_ delante del teatro! (bajar)  
**j** ¡\_\_\_\_ me un mensaje corto (sms) cuando llegues/llegue! (mandar)

**VII** These instructions are from a recipe for Spanish omelette. Put them in the **tú** form.

- a** Preheat the oven. \_\_\_\_\_ el horno. (precalentar)  
**b** Chop the potatoes. \_\_\_\_\_ las patatas. (picar)  
**c** Beat the eggs. \_\_\_\_\_ los huevos. (batir)  
**d** Put the potatoes into a bowl. \_\_\_\_\_ las patatas en una fuente.  
 (meter)  
**e** Add the oil and the beaten \_\_\_\_\_ el aceite y los huevos  
 eggs. batidos. (añadir)  
**f** Mix well. \_\_\_\_\_ bien. (mezclar)



- g** Warm up a frying pan. \_\_\_\_\_ una sartén. (calentar)  
**h** Pour the mixture into the pan. \_\_\_\_\_ la mezcla en la sartén. (verter)  
**i** Fry the omelette slowly. \_\_\_\_\_ a fuego lento. (freír)

**VIII** How would you tell someone to do these things? Use the **usted** form.

- a** Spend less time watching television. \_\_\_\_\_ menos tiempo viendo la tele. (pasar)  
**b** Eat more vegetables. \_\_\_\_\_ más verduras. (comer)  
**c** Drink more water. \_\_\_\_\_ más agua. (beber)  
**d** Go jogging. \_\_\_\_\_ footing. (hacer)  
**e** Close the door. \_\_\_\_\_ la puerta. (cerrar)  
**f** Open the window. \_\_\_\_\_ la ventana. (abrir)  
**g** Show your passport. \_\_\_\_\_ su pasaporte. (presentar)  
**h** Speak more slowly. \_\_\_\_\_ más despacio. (hablar)  
**i** Come with me. \_\_\_\_\_ conmigo. (venir)

**IX** Let's try a keep fit session. Give the **vosotros** form of the verbs in brackets, taking particular care with reflexives.

- a** Come in! ¡\_\_\_\_\_! (entrar)  
**b** Get in line. \_\_\_\_\_ una fila. (formar)  
**c** Find a space. \_\_\_\_\_ un espacio. (buscar)  
**d** Run to the wall. \_\_\_\_\_ hasta la pared. (correr)  
**e** Stand with your feet apart. \_\_\_\_\_ con los pies separados. (quedarse)  
**f** Stretch your arms. \_\_\_\_\_ los brazos. (estirar)  
**g** Do five press-ups. \_\_\_\_\_ cinco flexiones. (hacer)  
**h** Lower your shoulders. \_\_\_\_\_ los hombros. (bajar)  
**i** Bend your knees. \_\_\_\_\_ las rodillas. (doblar)  
**j** Relax! \_\_\_\_\_ (descansar)

**X** Tell some Spanish visitors the way to the town hall, using the **ustedes** form.

- a** Primero, \_\_\_\_\_ de aquí. (salir)  
**b** \_\_\_\_\_ a la derecha. (girar)  
**c** \_\_\_\_\_ la segunda calle a la derecha. (coger)  
**d** \_\_\_\_\_ todo derecho. (continuar)  
**e** \_\_\_\_\_ la plaza. (cruzar)  
**f** \_\_\_\_\_ la calle hasta la rotonda. (seguir)  
**g** \_\_\_\_\_ a la derecha: el ayuntamiento está enfrente. (torcer)

**E** Telling someone what not to do

As you have seen, you introduce a negative imperative with the word **no**. However, whilst the four *you* forms have different ways of forming the imperative, in the negative they all use the appropriate subjunctive forms (see 1.6).

This special part of the verb is formed by adding a set of endings based on **-e** to the stem of **-ar** verbs, and a set of endings based on **-a** to the stem of **-er** and **-ir** verbs.

Note that the reflexive pronoun and other object pronouns go in front of negative imperatives.

**XI** First match the English and Spanish, then cover up the right-hand side of the page and see if you can remember the Spanish.

- |   |      |                                     |
|---|------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>a</b> Don't open the door. (tú)                    | i    | No beba el agua.                    |
| <b>b</b> Don't walk on the grass.<br>(ustedes)        | ii   | No ponga sus botas en el mostrador. |
| <b>c</b> Don't eat in the shop.<br>(vosotros)         | iii  | No esperéis aquí.                   |
| <b>d</b> Don't drink the water. (usted)               | iv   | No dejes tu equipaje aquí.          |
| <b>e</b> Don't cross the road here.<br>(vosotros)     | v    | No comáis en la tienda.             |
| <b>f</b> Don't lean out of the window.<br>(ustedes)   | vi   | No fumen.                           |
| <b>g</b> Don't leave your luggage here. (tú)          | vii  | No pisen la hierba.                 |
| <b>h</b> Don't wait here. (vosotros)                  | viii | No crucéis la calle aquí.           |
| <b>i</b> Don't put your boots on the counter. (usted) | ix   | No abras la puerta.                 |
| <b>j</b> Don't wear black. (tú)                       | x    | No se asomen por la ventanilla.     |
| <b>k</b> Don't smoke. (ustedes)                       | xi   | No te vistas de negro.              |

**XII** Translate this note from a mother to her children, using the negatives, interrogatives and imperatives explained in section 1.3.I to 1.3.4. Some help is given in brackets.

Dear Sean and Siobhan:

I've had enough! (¡Ya estoy harta!) Why are you not good children? Why are you so lazy? (perezoso) You don't tidy (arreglar) your things and you don't clean (limpiar) your bedrooms. Why don't you tidy and clean them once a week, at least? Please, help me in the house! I love you both, but please don't make it so difficult!

Mum

**XIII** Using the model answer for section 1.2.6 exercise III, write a message to your Spanish friends explaining how to get to your house; use the 'usted' and 'ustedes' imperative forms as explained in sections C and D. First write a version in the singular 'usted' form, then re-write it using 'ustedes' form.

### 1.3.4 ► Fast track: negatives, interrogatives and imperatives

- A Negatives: saying you don't do something  
You put **no** in front of the verb.

No sé.	I don't know.
No vende su coche.	He isn't selling his car.
No puedo venir.	I can't come.

- B Interrogatives: asking questions  
You can:

- make a statement and change the intonation: **¿Vas a Madrid?**
- invert the subject and the verb when a subject pronoun or the name or word for the subject is expressed: **¿Va usted a Madrid?**
- use a question word, then the verb as normal: **¿Adónde vas?**
- use a question word, then invert the expressed subject and verb: **¿Adónde va María?**

Useful question words (note they all have an accent):

¿Cuánto/a/os/as?	How much?
¿Cómo?	How? Pardon?
¿Dónde?	Where?
¿Por qué?	Why?
¿Cuándo?	When?
¿Qué?	What?
¿Quién?	Who?

- C Imperatives: giving orders, directions and instructions  
To make the imperative when talking to a child, family member or friend, you use a form usually based on the **tú** form of the present tense without the final **-s**.

¡Espera!	Wait!
----------	-------

There are some irregular forms:

¡Ve!	Go!
¡Ven de prisa!	Come quickly!

For **vosotros/as** imperatives, when speaking to two or more children, family members or friends, use a form based on the infinitive, replacing the final **-r** with **-d**:

¡Esperad!
¡Id!
¡Venid de prisa!

To make the **usted** imperative, when talking to a stranger or senior, you use a subjunctive form usually based on the **yo** form of the present tense without the final **-o**, adding **-e** for **-ar** verbs and **-a** for **-er** and **-ir** verbs.

¡Espere!

There are some irregular forms:

¡Vaya!

¡Venga de prisa!

For the **ustedes** imperative, when talking to two or more strangers or seniors, you use the **usted** imperative and add **-n**.

¡Esperen!

There are some irregular forms:

¡Vayan!

¡Vengan de prisa!

The appropriate form of the subjunctive is used for all negative imperatives.

## 1.4 Talking about what has already happened: the past tenses

You use the past tenses to say what you have done or what has happened.



**If you know when to use the perfect, imperfect and preterite tenses, go on to 1.4.1.**

In Spanish, just as in English, there are different ways of expressing the past. The tenses you will need to use most are the perfect, the imperfect and the preterite tenses.

### A The perfect tense (*el perfecto*)

The perfect tense is so called because it describes a single, completed action. Like the English equivalent, it is mostly used for an action in the immediate past, one which has just happened. It is probably the easiest Spanish tense, and is much more straightforward than its French equivalent.

I have eaten

he comido

I have arrived

he llegado

The perfect tense translates *I have played* and *I played*, and the question forms *Have you played?* and *Did you play?*

You use the perfect tense when you are talking or asking about something which happened and finished in the very recent past. However, in some areas of Spain, and in many countries in Hispano-America, the preterite is used in these situations instead of the Perfect. For example, in the examples above: *Ya comí* and *Ya llegué*.



Ask yourself: Did it happen once in the recent past? Is it over? Is it finished? Then use the **perfect** tense.

## B The imperfect tense (*el imperfecto*)

The imperfect tense translates *I was playing when ...*, *Were you playing when ...?* and *I used to play (a long time ago)*, and is used for repeated actions and descriptions in the past.

You use the imperfect tense:

- to talk about what used to happen in general:  
I used to go to school by bus.      Iba a la escuela en el autobús.
- to describe things in the past:  
It was always raining.      Llovía todo el tiempo.
- to say what was happening when something else happened (an interrupted action):  
I was having a shower      Me duchaba cuando llegó.  
when he arrived.

Note how in the last example the single completed action is described in the preterite.



Ask yourself: Did it use to happen in the past? Was it happening when something else happened? If you can use was/were + another verb in English, you use the **imperfect** in Spanish.

## C The preterite tense (*el pretérito*)

The preterite tense is so called because it describes a single, completed action at a specific moment in the (not recent) past; like the English equivalent – the past simple – it is mostly used for an action in the distant past, but in some parts of Spain and Hispano-America, it is used for an action which has just happened, as in American usage of English. It is not the easiest Spanish tense to form, but at least it is easy to decide when to use it: where we use the past simple in English.

- I dined out yesterday evening.      Anoche cené fuera.  
I arrived before the train.      Llegué antes que el tren.

The preterite translates *I played*, and the question form *Did you play?*

You use the preterite tense when you are talking or asking about something which happened and finished in the (usually not very recent) past.



Ask yourself: Did it happen once in the past? Is it over? Is it finished? Then use the **preterite** tense or, if very recent, use the **perfect** tense.

## I Which tense are you going to use?

- a Yesterday I went to town.
- b I bought a new pair of trainers.
- c Then I went to the gym.
- d I used to go three times a week.
- e I met my girlfriend at the gym.
- f She was on the rowing machine.
- g I was doing weights.
- h She was laughing at me.
- i I asked her why.
- j My shorts were inside out.

### 1.4.1 The perfect tense



**If you know how to form the perfect tense with haber, go on to 1.4.2.**

The perfect tense in Spanish is made up of two parts like the English perfect tense: part of the 'auxiliary' or 'helper' verb **haber** (*to have*) and the past participle.

Note that **haber** is only used for compound tenses such as the perfect, whilst **tener** is used for *to have* in the sense of possession.

to have	past participle	haber	participio pasado
I have	spoken	he	hablado
he has	eaten	ha	comido
we have	lived	hemos	vivido

In Spanish, all verbs form the perfect with **haber**. To get used to the sound of the perfect tense, choose one of the phrases below, or make up one of your own, and practise saying it until you are really fluent. Remember that in some areas of Spain, and in many countries in Hispano-America,

the preterite is used to express recent events instead of the Perfect. Note that all of the following examples would be more likely to be expressed using the preterite tense.

He ido al bar y he pedido una cerveza.	I went to the bar and I ordered a beer.
Has perdido un cuchillo y has roto una taza.	You have lost a knife and broken a cup.
Ha ido al pueblo y ha hecho las compras.	He/She went to town and did some shopping.
Hemos ido a la estación y hemos cogido el tren de las seis.	We went to the station and we got the 6 o'clock train.
Habéis olvidado las llaves y habéis abandonado el coche.	You have forgotten the keys and abandoned the car.
Han ido al mercado y han comprado peras.	They went to the market and bought pears.

Here is the full present tense of the verb **haber**:

---

**haber - to have**

---

he  
has  
ha  
hemos  
habéis  
han

---

**I Practise with the following. How would you say ...?**

- |                                     |                |
|-------------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>a</b> I have spoken              | _____ hablado  |
| <b>b</b> you have spoken (tú)       | _____ hablado  |
| <b>c</b> she has spoken             | _____ hablado  |
| <b>d</b> they have spoken           | _____ hablado  |
| <b>e</b> you have eaten (ustedes)   | _____ comido   |
| <b>f</b> we have eaten              | _____ comido   |
| <b>g</b> have you eaten? (vosotros) | ¿_____ comido? |
| <b>h</b> John has lived             | _____ vivido   |
| <b>i</b> you have lived (usted)     | _____ vivido   |
| <b>j</b> my wife and I have lived   | _____ vivido   |

**II Who watched the Telediario news bulletin? Complete these sentences by adding the correct form of **haber**.**

- a** (Nosotros) \_\_\_\_\_ visto el Telediario de las 10h.  
**b** (Ellos) \_\_\_\_\_ visto el Telediario de las 10h.  
**c** (Usted) \_\_\_\_\_ visto el Telediario de las 10h.  
**d** (Pili) \_\_\_\_\_ visto el Telediario de las 10h.

- e** (Vosotros) \_\_\_\_ visto el Telediario de las 10h.  
**f** (Ustedes) \_\_\_\_ visto el Telediario de las 10h.  
**g** (Tú) \_\_\_\_ visto el Telediario de las 10h.  
**h** (Yo) \_\_\_\_ visto el Telediario de las 10h.  
**i** (Paco) \_\_\_\_ visto el Telediario de las 10h.  
**j** (Ella) \_\_\_\_ visto el Telediario de las 10h.

Checklist: the perfect tense

To make the perfect tense you use the right person of **haber** (*to have*) + the past participle.

haber: he, has, ha, hemos, habéis, han

## 1.4.2 How to form the past participle



**If you know how to form the past participle, go on to 1.4.3.**

### A Regular verbs

In English, the past participle of regular verbs is formed by adding *-ed* to the infinitive:

play → played; watch → watched; dance → danced

In Spanish, **-ar**, **-er** and **-ir** verbs form their past participles in different ways. You take off the ending (**-ar**, **-er** or **-ir**) and add the following:

hablar → hablado; comer → comido; vivir → vivido

<b>-ar verbs</b>	<b>-er and -ir verbs</b>
-ado	-ido

**I** Using these rules, what would the past participles of these verbs be?

- |                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| <b>a</b> jugar     | <b>k</b> lavar   |
| <b>b</b> comer     | <b>l</b> pedir   |
| <b>c</b> terminar  | <b>m</b> cerrar  |
| <b>d</b> vender    | <b>n</b> empujar |
| <b>e</b> escuchar  | <b>o</b> tirar   |
| <b>f</b> perder    | <b>p</b> olvidar |
| <b>g</b> escoger   | <b>q</b> salir   |
| <b>h</b> esperar   | <b>r</b> entrar  |
| <b>i</b> organizar | <b>s</b> oír     |
| <b>j</b> invitar   | <b>t</b> partir  |



## II What did Marcos do this morning? Add the correct past participle.

- a** He \_\_\_\_ al tenis con Jaime. (jugar) I played tennis with Jaime.
- b** Luego he \_\_\_\_ un café con mi mujer. (tomar) Then I had a coffee with my wife.
- c** Después he \_\_\_\_ a mi colega Juan. (llamar) Next I rang my colleague Juan.
- d** Hemos \_\_\_\_ del nuevo proyecto. (hablar) We talked about the new plan.
- e** Me ha \_\_\_\_ su cooperación. (asegurar) He assured me of his cooperation.
- f** Hemos \_\_\_\_ una fecha para la rueda de prensa. (decidir) We decided on a date for the press conference.
- g** Me ha \_\_\_\_ el nuevo folleto por e-mail. (enviar) He sent me the new brochure by e-mail.
- h** He \_\_\_\_ una página. (cambiar) I changed a page.
- i** Yo la he \_\_\_\_\_. (imprimir) I printed it out.
- j** Después he \_\_\_\_ una telenovela. (mirar) After that I watched a soap on TV.

## B Irregular past participles

Many English past participles are irregular, but we are so used to them that we don't notice them:

run → ran; eat → eaten; drink → drunk, etc.

Some Spanish verbs also have irregular past participles. Although there seem to be quite a lot, they are easy to learn, as groups of them follow the same patterns.

Here are the most important irregular past participles. Remember that the examples can be translated as, for example *I have opened* or *I opened*.

infinitive	past participle	example	meaning	similar
abrir	abierto	he abierto la puerta	I have opened the door	
cubrir	cubierto	ha cubierto la sartén	he covered the frying pan	descubrir
decir	dicho	no hemos dicho nada	we have said nothing	
hacer	hecho	has hecho algo malo	you did something bad	satisfacer
volver	vuelto	no han vuelto aún	they have not returned yet	devolver, etc.

infinitive	past participle	example	meaning	similar
escribir	escrito	ha escrito una carta	he has written a letter	describir     componer, etc.
freír	frito	he frito una tortilla	I have fried an omelette	
morir	muerto	mi tío ha muerto	my uncle has died	
poner	puesto	se ha puesto un collar	she put on a necklace	
ver	visto	no la he visto hoy	I haven't seen her today	
romper	roto	usted ha roto la llave	you have broken the key	

Note: many of these have 'compound' forms, not just those shown. Keep your eyes open!

### III Complete these sentences by adding the past participle of the verb given in brackets.

- a** Este cliente ha \_\_\_\_ el nuevo folleto. (ver) This customer has seen the new brochure.
- b** Hemos \_\_\_\_ el texto. (escribir) We wrote the text.
- c** Paqui lo ha \_\_\_\_ en el ordenador. (poner) Paqui put it on the computer.
- d** La casa FoCo ha \_\_\_\_ esta versión. (hacer) The FoCo company made this version.
- e** El cliente ha \_\_\_\_ que le gusta. (decir) The customer said he liked it.
- f** Ha \_\_\_\_ a firmar el contrato. (volver) He signed the contract again.

### IV Now tell the story of Manuel's car. Complete these sentences using the perfect tense of the verb given in brackets. Not all the past participles are irregular!

- a** Manuel \_\_\_\_ 100.000 euros en la lotería. (ganar) Manuel won 100,000 euros in the lottery.
- b** \_\_\_\_ comprar un coche nuevo para su mujer. (querer) He wanted to buy a new car for his wife.
- c** \_\_\_\_ un anuncio para un coche eléctrico. (ver) He saw an advert for an electric car.
- d** \_\_\_\_ el coche. (comprar) He bought the car.
- e** El coche no le \_\_\_\_ a su mujer y \_\_\_\_ venderlo. (gustar, decidir) His wife didn't like the car and she decided to sell it.
- f** \_\_\_\_ un anuncio en el periódico. (poner) She put an advertisement in the newspaper.

- g** Un amigo de su marido \_\_\_\_\_ una cita para probar el coche. (hacer)  
**h** Manuel \_\_\_\_\_ a su mujer con su amigo en el coche. (ver)  
**i** \_\_\_\_\_ que tenían una aventura. (creer)  
**j** \_\_\_\_\_ el coche. (seguir)  
**k** \_\_\_\_\_ el límite de velocidad. (exceder)  
**l** La Guardia Civil lo \_\_\_\_\_. (detener)  
**m** \_\_\_\_\_ que pagar una multa. (tener)
- A friend of her husband made an appointment to try out the car.  
 Manuel saw his wife in the car with his friend.  
 He thought they were having an affair.  
 He followed the car.  
 He went too fast.  
 The police stopped him.  
 He had to pay a fine.

#### V Now can you translate these?

- a** Sofia has read his latest novel. (su última novela)  
**b** Have you read the book?  
**c** We haven't read the book.  
**d** They have seen the film of the book.  
**e** Sofia saw the film yesterday.  
**f** We haven't seen the film yet.  
**g** Have you seen the film?

Checklist: past participles

Most participles end in **-ado** or **-ido**.

Regular verbs:

**-ar** verbs end in **-ado**

**-er** and **-ir** verbs end in **-ido**

Many of the most commonly used verbs have irregular past participles. Look for patterns to try to remember them:

abierto, cubierto; dicho, hecho; escrito, frito; puesto, visto

### 1.4.3 Reflexive verbs in the perfect tense

Reflexive verbs behave in the same way in the perfect tense as they do in the present tense, with the reflexive pronoun coming before the appropriate part of the verb **haber**.

present	perfect
me levanto	me he levantado
te levantas	te has levantado
se levanta	se ha levantado
nos levantamos	nos hemos levantado
os levantáis	os habéis levantado
se levantan	se han levantado



At first you will probably only need to use reflexive verbs in the first person, so learn one phrase by heart and use it as a model to make other phrases later.

Me he levantado temprano.	I got up early.
Me he paseado en el parque.	I went for a walk in the park.
Me he perdido.	I got lost.
Me he dirigido a casa.	I headed for home.

**I** For more practice with the other persons, see if you can give the correct form of the perfect tense of **levantarse** to complete these sentences. When did they get up?

- a** Esta mañana, yo \_\_\_\_ a las seis.
- b** El panadero \_\_\_\_ a las cuatro.
- c** Su mujer \_\_\_\_ a las cuatro y media.
- d** Gil \_\_\_\_ a las siete y media.
- e** Patricio y Mónica \_\_\_\_ a las siete menos cuarto.
- f** Celia, ¿a qué hora \_\_\_\_ ?
- g** Nosotros \_\_\_\_ a las seis.
- h** Los señores Pérez \_\_\_\_ a las nueve.
- i** Amelia y Carmen \_\_\_\_ a las nueve y media.
- j** ¿A qué hora \_\_\_\_ tú esta mañana?

Here are some more reflexive verbs. You probably know most of them already.

infinitive	meaning	present tense	perfect tense
acordarse	to remember	me acuerdo	me he acordado
acostarse	to go to bed	me acuesto	me he acostado
afeitarse	to shave	me afeito	me he afeitado
arreglarse	to get ready	me arreglo	me he arreglado
despertarse	to wake up	me despierto	me he despertado
dormirse	to fall asleep	me duermo	me he dormido
enfadarse	to get angry	me enfado	me he enfadado
equivocarse	to make a mistake	me equivoco	me he equivocado
lavarse	to wash	me lavo	me he lavado
pasearse	to go for a walk	me paseo	me he paseado
peinarse	to comb one's hair	me peino	me he peinado
perderser	to get lost	me pierdo	me he perdido

**II** Before you leave for your night shift at work, write a note to your partner for him/her to find when he/she arrives home; tell him/her what you have done around the house, what each of the two children has done, what they have both done and what you all did together. Ask if he/she

has done some shopping, and has he/she had a good day at work.

Checklist: perfect tense

You use the perfect tense to talk about something which has happened at a recent specific time in the past.

All verbs form the perfect tense with **haber** and the past participle of the verb, e.g. **he comido**.

haber: he, has, ha, hemos, habéis, han

The past participle does not change its ending when used to form the perfect tense.

### 1.4.4 When to use the imperfect tense



**If you know when to use the imperfect tense, go on to 1.4.5.**

You use the imperfect tense to:

- describe what something was like in the past:

When I was small, we lived  
in Scotland.

The house was old.

It rained every day.

Cuando era pequeño vivíamos en  
Escocia.

La casa era vieja.

Llovía todos los días.

- say what someone or something used to do:

I used to walk to school.

We used to collect wood for  
the fire.

My father used to go fishing.

Iba a la escuela a pie.

Recogíamos leña para el fuego.

Mi padre iba de pesca.

- describe an interrupted action (say what someone/ something was doing when something else happened):

I was watching television  
when the phone rang.

Veía (imperfect) la televisión  
cuando sonó (preterite)  
el teléfono.



If you would use *was* or *were* or *used to* in English, you need to use the imperfect to say the same thing in Spanish.



The imperfect is usually the tense to use for describing the weather in the past.

hacía sol – it was sunny

llovía – it was raining

## 1.4.5 How to form the imperfect tense



If you know how to form the imperfect tense, go on to 1.4.7.

To form the imperfect tense, you need to know the infinitive stem (e.g. **hablar** → **habl-**) and add the endings for **-ar** verbs or **-er** and **-ir** verbs as appropriate.

person	endings for -ar verbs	endings for -er and -ir verbs
yo	-aba	-ía
tú	-abas	-ías
él/ella/usted	-aba	-ía
nosotros/as	-ábamos	-íamos
vosotros/as	-abais	-íais
ellos/ellas/ustedes	-aban	-ían

### A Regular verbs

Here are full examples of the different types of regular verbs:

hablar	comer	vivir
habl <b>aba</b>	com <b>ía</b>	viv <b>ía</b>
habl <b>abas</b>	com <b>ías</b>	viv <b>ías</b>
habl <b>aba</b>	com <b>ía</b>	viv <b>ía</b>
habl <b>ábamos</b>	com <b>íamos</b>	viv <b>íamos</b>
habl <b>abais</b>	com <b>íais</b>	viv <b>íais</b>
habl <b>aban</b>	com <b>ían</b>	viv <b>ían</b>

### I What were they doing when the lights went out?

- a Mi marido \_\_\_\_ delante de la televisión. (dormir)
- b Carlos \_\_\_\_ la televisión. (ver)
- c Maleni \_\_\_\_ una revista. (leer)
- d Yo \_\_\_\_ con mi vecina. (charlar)
- e (Nosotros) \_\_\_\_ del nuevo primer ministro. (hablar)
- f Sarita se \_\_\_\_ (duchar)
- g Francisco \_\_\_\_ a su novia. (telefonear)
- h Andrés y su amiga \_\_\_\_ sus motos en la cochera. (reparar)
- i Nicolás y Alejandro \_\_\_\_ al billar en la sala de juegos. (jugar)

## B Irregular verbs

The following three verbs are irregular in the imperfect tense, but note that the endings are similar to those of regular verbs:

<b>ser</b>	<b>ir</b>	<b>ver</b>
era	iba	veía
eras	ibas	veías
era	iba	veía
éramos	íbamos	veíamos
erais	ibais	veíais
eran	iban	veían

II Give the correct imperfect form of **ser** or **ir**.

- a** She was very small. \_\_\_\_\_ muy pequeña.  
**b** They were going to school. \_\_\_\_\_ al colegio.  
**c** We were young. \_\_\_\_\_ jóvenes.  
**d** You were a clever child. \_\_\_\_\_ un niño inteligente.  
**e** I used to go to the shops. \_\_\_\_\_ a las tiendas.

## III Give the correct imperfect form of the verb in brackets.

- a** (Yo) \_\_\_\_\_ en la parada del autobús. (esperar)  
**b** (Tú) \_\_\_\_\_ tu walkman. (escuchar)  
**c** (Nosotros) \_\_\_\_\_ al pueblo. (ir)  
**d** Patricio \_\_\_\_\_ el periódico. (leer)  
**e** (Ella) \_\_\_\_\_ a su novio. (esperar)  
**f** Martín \_\_\_\_\_ de su casa. (salir)  
**g** Sus padres \_\_\_\_\_ en el campo. (estar)  
**h** Silvia \_\_\_\_\_ footing. (hacer)  
**i** Vosotros \_\_\_\_\_ la televisión. (ver)  
**j** Mi padre \_\_\_\_\_ un aperitivo. (beber)

## IV Complete the sentences to describe what the weather was like.

- a** \_\_\_\_\_ buen tiempo. (hacer)  
**b** \_\_\_\_\_ (nevar)  
**c** \_\_\_\_\_ sol. (hacer)  
**d** El viento \_\_\_\_\_ (soplar)  
**e** El sol \_\_\_\_\_ (brillar)  
**f** \_\_\_\_\_ (llover)  
**g** La niebla \_\_\_\_\_ (desaparecer)  
**h** \_\_\_\_\_ calor. (hacer)  
**i** \_\_\_\_\_ una tormenta. (haber)  
**j** El mar \_\_\_\_\_ agitado. (estar)

**V In the old days ...**

- a** Cuando mi bisabuelo \_\_\_\_ pequeño, \_\_\_\_ en el campo. (ser, vivir)  
**b** Las casas \_\_\_\_ construidas de piedra. (estar)  
**c** \_\_\_\_ menos de veinte habitantes en su pueblo. (haber)  
**d** Se \_\_\_\_ la viña. (cultivar)  
**e** Los niños \_\_\_\_ en los campos. (trabajar)  
**f** \_\_\_\_ las uvas. (recoger)  
**g** Sus padres \_\_\_\_ el vino. (hacer)  
**h** No \_\_\_\_ electricidad. (haber)  
**i** Su madre \_\_\_\_ en un fuego de leña. (cocinar)  
**j** Mi bisabuelo \_\_\_\_ que ir a pie. (tener)  
**k** Para ir a la escuela, \_\_\_\_ una hora andando. (tardar)

**C Reflexive verbs**

Reflexive verbs behave the same in the imperfect tense as they do in the present tense, with the reflexive pronoun coming before the appropriate person of the verb, so they present no problems.

**VI Complete these sentences with the appropriate form of the reflexive verbs in brackets.**

- a** Cuando era joven, yo \_\_\_\_ a las siete. (levantarse)  
**b** Luego \_\_\_\_ en el cuarto de baño. ( ducharse)  
**c** \_\_\_\_ antes de tomar el desayuno. (vestirse)  
**d** Después, \_\_\_\_ los dientes. (lavarse)  
**e** Luego \_\_\_\_ en el espejo antes de ir al colegio. (mirarse)  
**f** Mi hermano perezoso \_\_\_\_ a las ocho. (levantarse)  
**g** No \_\_\_\_ casi nunca. ( ducharse)  
**h** Sólo \_\_\_\_ antes de salir. (vestirse)  
**i** Nosotros dos, \_\_\_\_ prisa para llegar al cole a tiempo. (darse)  
**j** Mis padres siempre \_\_\_\_ antes que yo. (despertarse)  
**k** Nuestros padres \_\_\_\_ mucho con mi hermano. (enfadarse)  
**l** Durante el día, mi abuela \_\_\_\_ en el parque. (pasearse)

**VII You are explaining to a detective where the family was when a criminal came to call, and what each member of your family was doing ... Imagine yours is a large family, and include pets, so that you produce 7-8 verbs in the Imperfect tense.****1.4.6 Checklist: imperfect tense**

The imperfect tense is easy as it is always formed in the same way.

- Take the infinitive of the verb, remove the **-ar/-er/-ir** and add the new endings.



- There are just three irregular verbs: **ser (era)**, **ir (iba)** and **ver (veía)**.
- The endings for **-ar** verbs are: **-aba**, **-abas**, **-aba**, **-ábamos**, **-abais**, **-aban**; and for **-er** and **-ir** verbs are: **-ía**, **-ías**, **-ía**, **-íamos**, **-íais**, **-ían**.

You are most likely to need to use the imperfect tense when talking about yourself, or about the weather: **hacía ...**, **había ...**, etc.

### 1.4.7 The preterite tense



**If you know how to form the preterite tense, go on to 1.4.10.**

The preterite tense in Spanish is just like the English past simple tense, consisting of just one word. It is always used to describe a single, completed action, unless the action has just happened, in which case the perfect tense would be needed. The preterite is therefore used for narrative and reports of past events, as well as for recent everyday events. Remember that in some areas of Spain, and in many countries in Hispano-America, the preterite is used instead of the Perfect, even when very recent events are described.

English verb	English past simple	Spanish verb	Spanish preterite
to speak	I spoke	hablar	hablé
to eat	I ate	comer	comí
to live	I lived	vivir	viví

In Spanish, most verbs form the preterite on a stem based on the infinitive minus **-ar/-er/-ir**. To get used to the sound of the preterite, choose one of the phrases below, or make up one of your own, and practise saying it until you are really fluent. The following examples could be expressed in the perfect tense if recent actions, but are more likely to be in the preterite.

Fui al bar y pedí una cerveza.

I went to the bar and I ordered a beer.

Perdiste un cuchillo y rompiste una taza.

You lost a knife and broke a cup.

Fue al pueblo e hizo las compras.

He/She went to town and did some shopping.

Fuimos a la estación y cogimos el tren de las seis.

Olvidasteis las llaves y abandonasteis el coche.

Fueron al mercado y compraron peras.

We went to the station and got the 6 o'clock train.

You forgot the keys and abandoned the car.

They went to the market and bought pears.

## A Regular verbs

Here are the preterite forms of regular **-ar**, **-er** and **-ir** verbs. Note that **-er** and **-ir** verbs share the same endings.

<b>-ar: hablar</b>	<b>-er: comer</b>	<b>-ir: vivir</b>
hablé	comí	viví
hablaste	comiste	viviste
habló	comió	vivió
hablamos	comimos	vivimos
hablasteis	comisteis	vivisteis
hablaron	comieron	vivieron

### I Practise with the following. How would you say ...?

- a** I spoke
- b** you spoke (tú)
- c** she spoke
- d** they spoke
- e** you ate (ustedes)
- f** we ate
- g** Did you eat? (vosotros)
- h** John lived
- i** you lived (usted)
- j** my wife and I lived

### II What did Marcos do yesterday? Put the verb given in brackets into the right form of the preterite.

- a** \_\_\_\_ con mi amigo Jaime. (charlar) I chatted to my friend Jaime.
- b** Luego \_\_\_\_ un café con mi mujer. (tomar) Then I had a coffee with my wife.
- c** Después \_\_\_\_ a mi colega Juan. (llamar) Next I rang my colleague Juan.
- d** \_\_\_\_ del nuevo proyecto. (hablar) We talked about the new plan.
- e** Me \_\_\_\_ su cooperación. (asegurar) He assured me of his cooperation.
- f** \_\_\_\_ una fecha para la rueda de prensa. (decidir) We decided on a date for the press conference.

- g** Me \_\_\_\_ el nuevo folleto por e-mail. (enviar) He sent me the new brochure by e-mail.
- h** \_\_\_\_ una página. (cambiar) I changed a page.
- i** Yo la \_\_\_\_ (imprimir) I printed it out.
- j** Después \_\_\_\_ una telenovela. (ver) After that I watched a soap on TV.

### B Verbs with spelling and stem changes

A number of verbs need a spelling change in the **yo** form of the preterite to keep the sound correct. Here are examples of the main changes:

<b>-c-</b> → <b>-qu-</b>	<b>-g-</b> → <b>-gu-</b>	<b>-z-</b> → <b>-c-</b>
busqu <b>é</b> busc <b>aste</b> , etc.	jugu <b>é</b> jug <b>aste</b> , etc.	cruc <b>é</b> cruz <b>aste</b> , etc.

### III What did Marcos do last Saturday? Add the right form of the preterite.

- a** \_\_\_\_ al tenis con Jaime. (jugar) I played tennis with Jaime.
- b** Después \_\_\_\_ la ciudad. (cruzar) Next I crossed the city.
- c** Luego \_\_\_\_ a mi mujer en la tienda. (buscar) I looked for my wife in the shop.
- d** \_\_\_\_ un sofá nuevo. (buscar) We looked for a new sofa.
- e** \_\_\_\_ la plaza para ir al parque. (cruzar) We crossed the square to go to the park.
- f** Allí nos \_\_\_\_ nuestros hijos. (buscar) Our children looked for us there.
- g** Nuestro hijo \_\_\_\_ al fútbol. (jugar) Our son played football.
- h** Nuestras hijas \_\_\_\_ al baloncesto. (jugar) Our daughters played basketball.

A few verbs have a spelling change in the third person singular and plural forms: in the case of **creer** and **leer**, the **-i-** changes to **-y-** in these forms. A handful of **-ir** verbs with stem changes in the present tense change **-e-** to **-i-** or **-o-** to **-u-** in the third person forms. Note that this is the only example of stem-changing in the preterite. The rest of the changes seen in the present tense form are not needed, since, for almost all verbs in the preterite, the stress is always on the ending.

Here are these two types of change presented together:

<b>-i- → -y-</b>	<b>-e- → -i-</b>	<b>-o- → -u-</b>
<b>creer</b>	<b>preferir</b>	<b>dormir</b>
creí creíste creyó creímos creísteis creyeron	preferí preferiste prefirió preferimos preferisteis prefirieron	dormí dormiste dormió dormimos dormisteis durmieron

### C Irregular verbs

Here are the only completely irregular verbs in the preterite tense. Note that **ser** and **ir** actually share the same preterite forms – weird but wonderful, as it saves learning an extra set of forms!

<b>dar – to give</b>	<b>ver – to see</b>	<b>ir – to go + ser – to be</b>
di diste dio dimos disteis dieron	vi viste vio vimos visteis vieron	fui fuiste fue fuimos fuisteis fueron

### IV Who watched Real Madrid v Barcelona? Complete these sentences by adding the right form of **dar**, **ir** or **ver**.

- a Mi tío me \_\_\_\_ una entrada para el partido.
- b Los padres de Paco le \_\_\_\_ una entrada también.
- c Los dos \_\_\_\_ al partido en metro.
- d Primero yo \_\_\_\_ a comprar una camisa del Real.
- e Mi amigo Paco \_\_\_\_ a comprar una camisa del Barça.
- f Al salir de la tienda, yo \_\_\_\_ a Paco con su camisa.
- g No \_\_\_\_ al partido con Paco.
- h No \_\_\_\_ el partido juntos.

There is a small group of verbs which don't fit the patterns above, and which all have an irregular preterite stem: these are known as the **pretérito grave**, which means their stress is always on the last-but-one syllable, which is why there are no accents on any of the forms. There is just one set of endings which are a sort of blend of the preterite endings for **-ar** and **-er/-ir** verbs: **-e**, **-iste**, **-o**, **-imos**, **-isteis**, **-ieron**.

Here is an example, followed by a list of the most useful **pretérito grave** verbs:

estar – to be

estuve, estuviste, estuvo,

estuvimos, estuvisteis, estuvieron

infinitive	meaning	preterite stem	preterite
andar	to walk	anduv-	anduv <b>e</b> , etc.
poder	to be able to	pud-	pud <b>e</b>
poner	to put	pus-	pus <b>e</b>
querer	to want	quis-	quis <b>e</b>
saber	to know	sup-	sup <b>e</b>
tener	to have	tuv-	tuv <b>e</b>
venir	to come	vin-	vin <b>e</b>

One verb also has a spelling change in the third person singular:

infinitive	meaning	stem	preterite
hacer	to do, make	hic-, hiz-	hice, hiciste, hiz <b>o</b> , hicimos, hicisteis, hicieron

Two or three verbs have these forms except that they lose the **-i-** in the third person plural. The most useful one is:

infinitive	meaning	stem	preterite
decir	to say	dij-	dije, dijiste, dijo, dijimos, dijisteis, dij <b>eron</b>



Although these look awkward, they are easy to learn; try to learn the stems by heart – some even sound rather amusing.

**V** Storytelling in the preterite: complete by adding the correct form of the right verb from the list in the box below.

El año pasado, (nosotros) 1 a España. Nos 2 dos semanas en la playa. 3 un apartamento en Tarifa. Mi novio 4 windsurf y yo 5 todo el día tomando el sol en la playa y leyendo.

Mi hermano y su novia 6 a quedarse un fin de semana con nosotros. Nos 7 mucho. Por la tarde 8 en un restaurante y luego 9 hasta las tres de la madrugada. Al día siguiente, todos 10 windsurf. Y vosotros, ¿adónde 11 y qué 12 allí?

alquilar, bailar, cenar, divertir(se), hacer (x 3), ir (x 2), pasar, quedarse, venir

## D Reflexive verbs

Reflexive verbs behave in the same way in the preterite tense as they do in the present, with the reflexive pronoun coming before the appropriate person of the verb, so they present no problems.

## VI What did we do yesterday? Add the right form of the verb given in brackets.

- a \_\_\_ a las ocho. (despertarse)
- b \_\_\_ a las nueve. (levantarse)
- c \_\_\_ a la orilla del río. (pasearse)
- d \_\_\_ de camino. (equivocarse)
- e \_\_\_ (perderse)
- f \_\_\_ en un pequeño pueblo. (pararse)
- g Mi amiga \_\_\_ nerviosa. (ponerse)
- h (Ella) \_\_\_ de un amigo que vive allí cerca. (acordarse)
- i (Ella) \_\_\_, dejándome solo. (irse)

## VII Based on the model answer for 1.4.5 ex VII, use the preterite tense to say what each member of the family did when they heard the strange noise. Say what you all did using the 'nosotros' form, and give the same verb in 'they' form for the children; the rest can be individual actions.

### 1.4.8 Checklist: preterite tense

You use the preterite tense to talk about a single, completed action which happened at a specific time in the past.

- Almost all verbs have regular endings, but some need minor spelling changes.
- The endings for **-ar** verbs are: **-é, -aste, -ó, -amos, -asteis, -aron.**
- The endings for both **-er** and **-ir** verbs are: **-í, -iste, -ió, -imos, -isteis, -ieron.**
- A group of verbs have special stems, and the endings: **-e, -iste, -o, -imos, -isteis, -ieron.**

### 1.4.9 Preterite or imperfect?

Remember to use the imperfect tense for the action that was ongoing, and the preterite tense for the action that 'interrupted' it.

## I You need to use both the imperfect and the preterite to complete these sentences.

- a Sus padres \_\_\_ (vivir) en León cuando Nuria \_\_\_ (nacer).
- b Cuando ella \_\_\_ (ser) pequeña, su familia \_\_\_ (mudarse) a Perú.

- c** Nuria \_\_\_\_ (tener) cinco años cuando su hermano \_\_\_\_ (nacer).  
**d** Pepe \_\_\_\_ (sufrir) un accidente cuando \_\_\_\_ (tener) diez años.  
**e** \_\_\_\_ (cruzar) la calle cuando un coche no \_\_\_\_ (pararse) en el semáforo.  
**f** Nuria \_\_\_\_ (ver) el accidente mientras \_\_\_\_ (esperar) el autobús.  
**g** Ella \_\_\_\_ (tener) diecinueve años cuando \_\_\_\_ (pasar) su examen de selectividad.  
**h** Nuria \_\_\_\_ (estudiar) biología cuando \_\_\_\_ (decidir) abandonar sus estudios.  
**i** \_\_\_\_ (hacer) un cursillo de informática cuando \_\_\_\_ (ver) el anuncio de MegaSA.  
**j** Ella \_\_\_\_ (trabajar) en esta empresa cuando \_\_\_\_ (conocer) a su futuro marido.  
**k** Nuria \_\_\_\_ (ser) jefa de personal cuando él \_\_\_\_ (solicitar) un empleo.  
**l** \_\_\_\_ (hacer) buen tiempo cuando Nuria y José \_\_\_\_ (casarse).

- II** Write an account of what you and a friend did yesterday; you could describe a trip to the sea, going to a sports game or concert, or a visit to a friend or relative. Whichever you choose, use the Imperfect for background descriptions and the preterite for actions; try to include various verb 'persons'.

### 1.4.10 ► **Fast track:** the past tenses

There are different ways of saying what has happened in the past.

The perfect tense

This is used to describe an action in the past which has been completed recently.



The perfect tense is not used as often as in English. The preterite is often used in its place.

The perfect tense is made up of the 'auxiliary' or 'helper' verb **haber** and the past participle, as in English: *I have eaten* – **he comido**.

Past participles do not change their spelling when used as part of a perfect-tense verb.

The imperfect tense

The imperfect is used to talk about an ongoing or habitual action in the past.

If you can use *was/were* or *used to* in English, you use the imperfect tense in Spanish.

It is formed by adding to the infinitive stem the endings: **-aba, -abas, -aba, -ábamos, -abais, -aban** for **-ar** verbs, and **-ía, -ías, -ía, -íamos, -íais, -ían** for **-er** and **-ir** verbs.

The preterite tense

This is used to describe a single, completed action in the past. It is often used where we might expect the perfect tense.

For **-ar** verbs, take the **-ar** off the infinitive and add the following endings to the stem: **-é, -aste, -ó, -amos, -asteis, -aron**.

For **-er/-ir** verbs add: **-í, -iste, -ió, -imos, -isteis, -ieron**.

A few verbs need a minor spelling change, and a small group have special stems and endings.

## 1.5 Talking about what will happen: the future tenses and the conditional

You use the future tense to talk about something that is going to happen, or something you want to do or are going to do in the future. In Spanish, just as in English, there are two ways of saying what is going to happen. Note also that the present tense is often used to express an event which will happen in the near future (see 1.2).

### A The near future/the future immediate: *el futuro inmediato*

This is like the English *I am going to ...*, e.g. *I am going to go*, *He is going to play*, and is made up of **ir** (*to go*) + **a** + the infinitive of the main verb:

Voy a salir.

I am going to go out.

This is the most useful future tense to learn, as it is the one used most frequently in conversation when talking about the near future: this evening, tomorrow, in the next few days or when you would use *going to* in English.



B The future simple: *el futuro*

This is the 'proper' future tense. It translates the English *will* and can imply intention as well as future action, e.g. *He will go – I will make sure he does!*

jugaré	I will play
irá	he will go
escucharán	they will listen



The future tense is easier to use if you are listing a lot of things that you are going to do or that will happen, rather than repeat **ir a** several times.

C The conditional: *el condicional*

This is not strictly considered a future tense but it talks about the future: what you would do if ...

It translates *would/should/could* in English: *I would like to go if ...*, talking about something you would like to do in the future.

I would like to go to Madrid.  
We really should/ought to go.  
Could we go tomorrow?

It is also used as a polite way of stating a wish or asking for something:

I would like to leave now.                      Me gustaría irme ahora.

### 1.5.1 The near future/immediate future: I am going to ...



**If you know all about the future immediate, go on to 1.5.2.**

To make the future immediate, you need to know the present tense of the verb **ir** and the infinitive of the verb you want to use.

Here is the present tense of **ir**:

singular	meaning	plural	meaning
voy	I am going	vamos	we are going
vas	you are going	vais	you are going
va	he/she is going/ you are going	van	they are going/you are going

Voy a cenar en casa.

I am going to have dinner at home.

Tú vas a ver el programa.

You are going to watch the programme.

Ella va a llegar tarde.

She is going to arrive late.

Nosotros vamos a almorzar.

We are going to have lunch.

Vosotros vais a visitar el museo.

You are going to visit the museum.

Ellos van a esquiar.

They are going to go skiing.

**I What are these people going to do? Complete the sentences by adding the correct form of the verb *ir*.**

- a Yo \_\_\_ a hacer windsurf.
- b Tú \_\_\_ a hacer ala delta.
- c Mario \_\_\_ a hacer rafting.
- d Usted \_\_\_ a hacer surfing.
- e Nosotros \_\_\_ a comprar un todoterreno.
- f Vosotros \_\_\_ a esquiar.
- g Natalia y Simón \_\_\_ a hacer snowboard.
- h ¿Ustedes \_\_\_ a hacer alpinismo?
- i Patricio y Benjamín \_\_\_ a hacer espeleología.
- j Yo me \_\_\_ a quedar en casa.

**II What are they going to do for Diego's birthday? Add the missing part of *ir*.**

- a Sus colegas \_\_\_ a organizar una fiesta.
- b Tomás \_\_\_ a hacer un pastel.
- c Sabina \_\_\_ a enviar las invitaciones.
- d Isabel y Silvia \_\_\_ a preparar las tapas.
- e Sergio \_\_\_ a comprar una botella de Cava.
- f Su jefe \_\_\_ a ofrecerle un regalo.
- g Roldán \_\_\_ a decorar la habitación.
- h Nosotros \_\_\_ a ayudar a Roldán.
- i Silvia \_\_\_ a buscar los vasos.
- j Vosotros \_\_\_ a cantar «cumpleaños feliz».



Reflexive verbs in the future immediate tense need a little bit of care. This is only because you have a choice as to where to put the reflexive pronoun or 'self' word! The reflexive pronoun can be placed just in front of the two parts of the verb, as in most tenses, or it can be stuck on the end of the infinitive. This normally makes no difference to the meaning, but perhaps a slight change in emphasis. For example: *me voy a duchar* = *voy a ducharme* – *I am going to have a shower*.

## 1.5.2 The future simple tense: I will ...



If you know about the future tense, go on to 1.5.3.

This is the 'proper' future tense, sometimes called the future simple because it consists of just one word. It translates the English *will* and is used to talk about events which will take place in the future.

jugaré	I will play
irá	he will go
escucharán	they will listen

Note that reflexive verbs in the future simple tense have the reflexive pronoun in front of the verb, as in most tenses. For example: *me ducharé después del partido* – *I'll have a shower after the match.*

### A Regular verbs

Fortunately, most verbs are regular in the future tense! It is made by adding these endings to the infinitive: **-é, -ás, -á, -emos, -éis, -án**. A few verbs have a slightly modified future stem.



Notice that the endings are the same as those of the present tense of the verb **haber** (but without the **-ab-** in the **vosotros** form).

Here are examples of regular verbs in full:

<b>-ar verbs</b>	<b>-er verbs</b>	<b>-ir verbs</b>
hablar <b>é</b>	comer <b>é</b>	vivir <b>é</b>
hablar <b>ás</b>	comer <b>ás</b>	vivir <b>ás</b>
hablar <b>á</b>	comer <b>á</b>	vivir <b>á</b>
hablar <b>emos</b>	comer <b>emos</b>	vivir <b>emos</b>
hablar <b>éis</b>	comer <b>éis</b>	vivir <b>éis</b>
hablar <b>án</b>	comer <b>án</b>	vivir <b>án</b>

### I Give the correct future tense forms of the verbs in brackets.

- |                                |                                 |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>a</b> nosotros ____ (mirar) | <b>f</b> él ____ (escribir)     |
| <b>b</b> tú ____ (preparar)    | <b>g</b> ellas ____ (llegar)    |
| <b>c</b> vosotros ____ (meter) | <b>h</b> nosotros ____ (entrar) |
| <b>d</b> ellos ____ (comer)    | <b>i</b> yo ____ (partir)       |
| <b>e</b> usted ____ (permitir) | <b>j</b> ustedes ____ (subir)   |

### II What are they going to wear for the fiesta? Add the correct form of **llevar**.

- a** Yo \_\_\_\_ el traje tradicional de la región.  
**b** Julieta \_\_\_\_ una falda roja y una blusa blanca.

- c Mi amigo \_\_\_\_ su traje negro y una camisa blanca.  
 d Nicolás \_\_\_\_ sus vaqueros y una camiseta vieja, como siempre.  
 e Mis amigas \_\_\_\_ su vestido tradicional bordado.  
 f Mis amigos \_\_\_\_ un pantalón negro y una camisa azul.  
 g Nosotros \_\_\_\_ unos calcetines blancos y unos zapatos negros.  
 h Y usted, ¿qué \_\_\_\_?  
 i ¿Qué \_\_\_\_ tú?

## B Irregular verbs

Some of the most common verbs are irregular in the future tense.



Look for patterns to help you remember them. Choose the four that you think you are most likely to need, and learn the **yo** form.

Here are the most useful verbs with irregular future forms. Notice that it is the stem that is slightly irregular – the endings are all regular:

infinitive	future
decir	diré, dirás, etc.
haber	habré
hacer	haré
poder	podré
poner	pondré
querer	querré
saber	sabré
salir	saldré
tener	tendré
venir	vendré

**NB:** Any compounds based on the verbs above have the same irregularity in the future tense.



Useful expressions: **ya te lo diré** – I'll tell you soon; **hará falta** – it will be necessary

## III For more practice, give the correct form of the verb in brackets.

- a yo \_\_\_\_ (tener)  
 b vosotros \_\_\_\_ (venir)  
 c tú \_\_\_\_ (hacer)  
 d nosotros \_\_\_\_ (haber)  
 e él \_\_\_\_ (salir)

- f** ella \_\_\_\_ (saber)  
**g** ustedes \_\_\_\_ (querer)  
**h** nosotros \_\_\_\_ (decir)  
**i** vosotros \_\_\_\_ (poner)  
**j** ellos \_\_\_\_ (poder)  
**k** usted \_\_\_\_ (tener)  
**l** yo \_\_\_\_ (venir)

**IV Write in the correct future form of the verb in brackets.**

- a** El año que viene, yo \_\_\_\_ veinte años. (tener)  
**b** En este momento, estudio en España, pero el año que viene yo \_\_\_\_ a Inglaterra. (ir)  
**c** Yo \_\_\_\_ un cursillo de inglés en Oxford. (hacer)  
**d** (Yo) te \_\_\_\_ mi nueva dirección. (enviar)  
**e** Tú \_\_\_\_ a verme en Oxford, ¿verdad? (ir)  
**f** Pues, tú \_\_\_\_, y nosotros \_\_\_\_ a Londres juntos. (venir, ir)  
**g** También \_\_\_\_ hacer un viaje a Escocia, pero \_\_\_\_ necesario ir en coche porque ir en tren \_\_\_\_ demasiado dinero! (poder, ser, costar)  
**h** Al terminar mi curso, yo \_\_\_\_ a España, y \_\_\_\_ para mi padre en su oficina. (volver, trabajar).

**V Before leaving for a holiday in the Sierra Nevada, a couple goes over the travel arrangements with the travel agent. Add the correct future form of the verb in brackets.**

- a** ¿Cuándo \_\_\_\_ nosotros? (salir)  
**b** Ustedes \_\_\_\_ el vuelo de Iberia de las 14h50. (coger)  
**c** Un autobús les \_\_\_\_ al llegar y les \_\_\_\_ al hotel. (esperar, llevar)  
**d** Todo el mundo \_\_\_\_ esquiar. (poder)  
**e** A mediodía, ustedes \_\_\_\_ en el hotel o en un bar, como quieran. (comer)  
**f** Por la tarde, \_\_\_\_ salir. (poder)  
**g** Como \_\_\_\_ frío, ustedes \_\_\_\_ que llevar ropa adecuada. (hacer, tener)

**1.5.3 The conditional – how to say: I would ...**



**If you don't want to practise the conditional, go on to the Fast track (1.5.4), as you might need to be able to recognise it when you hear it.**



You probably already know the expression **me gustaría** – *I would like*.

The conditional is used to translate *would*, *could* and *should* in English. It is called the conditional because you use it when you are making a condition: *I would go if you paid me!* But it is also used to ask for something politely: *I would like a box of chocolates.*

Once again, reflexive verbs in the conditional tense take the reflexive pronoun in front of the verb, as in most tenses. For example: *me compraría un nuevo i-Phone si tuviera dinero* – I would buy a new i-Phone if I had the money.

### A Regular verbs

The conditional is easy to learn as it is very similar to the future tense: infinitive + one set of endings. The endings are the same as the imperfect endings for **-er/-ir** verbs: **-ía, -ías, -ía, -íamos, -íais, -ían.**

<b>-ar verbs</b>	<b>-er verbs</b>	<b>-ir verbs</b>
hablar <b>ía</b>	comer <b>ía</b>	vivir <b>ía</b>
hablar <b>ías</b>	comer <b>ías</b>	vivir <b>ías</b>
hablar <b>ía</b>	comer <b>ía</b>	vivir <b>ía</b>
hablar <b>íamos</b>	comer <b>íamos</b>	vivir <b>íamos</b>
hablar <b>íais</b>	comer <b>íais</b>	vivir <b>íais</b>
hablar <b>ían</b>	comer <b>ían</b>	vivir <b>ían</b>

### VI How would you say the following?

I would ...

- a** eat (comer)
- b** drink (beber)
- c** sleep (dormir)
- d** speak (hablar)
- e** live (vivir)
- f** buy (comprar)
- g** ask (pedir)
- h** listen (escuchar)
- i** watch (mirar)

### VII Add the right conditional form of **jugar** to the following.

- |                                     |                             |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>a</b> Yo ____ al tenis.          | I would play tennis.        |
| <b>b</b> Mi amiga ____ también.     | My friend would play too.   |
| <b>c</b> Sus amigas ____ también.   | Her friends would play too. |
| <b>d</b> Nosotros no ____           | We wouldn't play.           |
| <b>e</b> Vosotros ____ al voleibol. | You would play volleyball.  |

### VIII Add the right conditional form of **preferir** to these sentences.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>a</b> Yo ____ ir a la playa.        | I would prefer to go to the beach.           |
| <b>b</b> Mi novio ____ hacer windsurf. | My boyfriend would prefer to go windsurfing. |

- c** Mis amigas \_\_\_\_ ir al pueblo. My girlfriends would prefer to go to town.  
**d** Nosotros \_\_\_\_ comer en un restaurante. We would prefer to eat in a restaurant.  
**e** ¿Qué \_\_\_\_ usted hacer? What would you prefer to do?

**IX Gustar and other 'back-to-front verbs'. Add the right conditional form of each one, and the correct pronoun (see 3.3).**

- a** \_\_\_\_ salir. (gustar) I would like to go out.  
**b** A Gil \_\_\_\_ quedarse en casa. (apetecer) Gil would feel like staying in.  
**c** A Patricia \_\_\_\_ ir al cine. (encantar) Patricia would love to go to the cinema.  
**d** A mis padres \_\_\_\_ ir a Chile. (interesar) My parents would be interested in going to Chile.  
**e** ¿Qué \_\_\_\_ hacer, Paqui? (apetecer) What would you feel like doing, Paqui?  
**f** ¿Qué \_\_\_\_ hacer, niños? (gustar) What would you like to do, children?  
**g** ¿Qué \_\_\_\_ hacer, Señor Pérez? (gustar) What would you like to do, Señor Pérez?  
**h** ¿Qué \_\_\_\_ hacer, señores? (gustar) What would you like to do, ladies and gentlemen?

**B Irregular verbs**

These have the same stems as in the future tense (see 1.5.2 B), but with the regular conditional endings.

<b>infinitive</b>	<b>conditional</b>
decir	diría
haber	habría
hacer	haría
poder	podría
poner	pondría
querer	querría
saber	sabría
salir	saldría
tener	tendría
venir	vendría

**X Talking about yourself: how would you say the following?**

- a** Yo \_\_\_\_ algo para comer. (hacer) I would make something to eat.  
**b** \_\_\_\_ del pueblo. (salir) I would leave town.  
**c** \_\_\_\_ un amigo. (tener) I would have a friend.  
**d** Se lo \_\_\_\_ a mis amigos. (decir) I would tell my friends.

<b>e</b> ___ a España. (venir)	I would come to Spain.
<b>f</b> ___ hacer windsurf. (poder)	I could windsurf.
<b>g</b> Me ___ un abrigo. (ponerse)	I would put on a coat.
<b>h</b> ___ la respuesta. (saber)	I would know the answer.
<b>i</b> Yo ___ salir. (querer)	I would want to go out.
<b>j</b> Yo le ___ escrito. (haber)	I would have written to him.

**XI** What could they do? Fill in the correct form of **poder**.

<b>a</b> Nuria ___ regresar a casa.	Nuria could go home.
<b>b</b> Nosotros ___ ir al cine.	We could go to the cinema.
<b>c</b> ___ ir al polideportivo.	We could go to the leisure centre.
<b>d</b> Yo ___ hacer judo.	I could do judo.
<b>e</b> Tú ___ jugar al voleibol.	You could play volleyball.
<b>f</b> Carmen ___ hacer equitación.	Carmen could go riding.
<b>g</b> Los niños ___ ir a la piscina.	The children could go swimming.
<b>h</b> ___ reunirnos después.	We could meet afterwards.
<b>i</b> ___ ir a la bodega.	We could go to the bodega.
<b>j</b> ___ ir a mi casa.	We could go back to my house.

**XII** Translate the following using the Future Immediate, the Future Simple and the Conditional as appropriate.

Next summer, we are not going to spend our holidays together as a family; instead, each member of the family is going to do something different. Sean will spend the holidays with his friend in the mountains; they will do some hiking (senderismo) every day. Siobhan will go to Paris with her friend Jane and her parents. They will visit museums and art galleries. My partner and I will go to the Bahamas. We'll spend two weeks in a hotel by the sea, and we'll spend each day on the beach. We would take the children with us, but then we would have to pay for them too, and we would have no freedom. Instead, we'll be able to relax by ourselves!

### 1.5.4 ► **Fast track:** future and conditional

D The future tenses

There are two ways of saying what you are going to do or what is going to happen.

- The future immediate, or near future, is like the English *going to*. It is made up of the verb *to go* (**ir: voy, vas, va, vamos, vais, van**) + **a** + the infinitive.
- The future simple tense is made up of the infinitive and the endings: **-é, -ás, -á, -emos, -éis, -án**.





The pattern of the endings is like those of the present tense of **haber** without the **-ab-** in the **vosotros/as** form.

If you can't manage learning both ways at the moment, concentrate on the *future immediate*, but you should be able to recognise the future simple when someone uses it.

The two forms are often interchangeable.

- The *future immediate* is used more than the future simple in conversation when describing plans for the immediate future.
- If you would use *going to* in English, use **ir + a + infinitive** in Spanish.
- It is used for something that is about to happen:  
Ella va a casarse con Pablo.      She is going to marry Pablo (she is engaged).

- The *future simple* is sometimes used for something that you expect to happen.
- It is also used in lists where repeating **ir + a + infinitive** would be clumsy to say.
- It can be used to talk about something that 'may' happen:  
Ella se casará con Pablo.      She will marry Pablo, one day, eventually ...

These are the verbs most commonly used in the future tense, some of which have an irregular stem. It is useful to be able to recognise which verb they come from:

iré	ir
tendré	tener
deberé	deber
seré	ser
haré	hacer
podré	poder
cogeré	coger
sabré	saber
vendré	venir
veré	ver
querré	querer

#### D The conditional

The conditional translates *would*, e.g. *I would go, I would like*.

- You probably already know **me gustaría** (*I would like*), so you already know one ending. The endings are: **-ía, -ías, -ía, -íamos, -íais, -ían**.

- The most useful conditionals are:

me gustaría	I would like
me encantaría	I would love
preferiría	I would prefer
podríamos	we could
deberíamos	we should, ought to
sería	it would be

## 1.6 Expressing wishes, desires, doubts and uncertainties: the subjunctive



**If you are not ready for the subjunctive yet, go on to 1.7. If you just want to check your knowledge go to 1.6.4 Fast track.**

The subjunctive is not used much in English any more (only in expressions such as *If I were you ...*), but it has to be used in many expressions in Spanish, particularly when what is being stated is not certain, and notably for expressing wishes and desires. You are not likely to need to use those expressions yourself very often, other than the forms used for imperatives (see 1.3.3 C and D), but it is useful to be able to recognise them when you hear them and to understand which verb is being used. Choose one or two of the expressions to learn by heart and then use them as a model.

If you want to know more about the subjunctive go to *¡Acción Gramática!* or *¡Viva la Gramática!* (P. Turk and M. Zollo).

The subjunctive is nearly always preceded by the word **que**, but this does not mean that **que** is always followed by the subjunctive!

In Spanish, the subjunctive is used after verbs which express a wish or desire, i.e. these being examples of expressions describing something with an uncertain or hypothetical outcome:

Me gustaría que se fuera.	I would like him to go.
Espero que venga.	I hope that she will come.

... or a requirement (after **es necesario/hace falta** – *it is necessary that*):

Hace falta que sepa conducir.	He must be able to drive.
-------------------------------	---------------------------

... or a doubt or uncertainty:

No creo que tenga dinero.

I don't think (that) she has any money.

Es posible que los niños estén cansados.

It is possible that the children are tired.

... and after certain fixed expressions such as:

para que

in order that

para que llegue a tiempo

in order that he arrives on time

aunque

even if

aunque salga a las 6h00

even if he leaves at 6 o'clock

antes de que

before

antes de que compre su billete

before he buys his ticket

hasta que

until

hasta que llegue a la estación

until he arrives at the station



If in doubt, look in a good dictionary. There you will often find examples of expressions using these and other constructions, from which you can see when the subjunctive is necessary.

### 1.6.1 Expressing uncertainty, wishes and desires: how to form the subjunctive

Put simply, the subjunctive is formed by swapping the endings of **-ar** verbs and **-er/-ir** verbs, using the **yo** form of the present tense, without **-o**, as the stem. So, for **-ar** verbs the subjunctive endings are: **-e, -es, -e, -emos, -éis, -en**, and for **-er** and **-ir** verbs the subjunctive endings are: **-a, -as, -a, -amos, -áis, -an**.

You will recognise most of these forms from the imperative use of the subjunctive (see 1.3.3 C and D). As you can see, the **yo** form does not end in **-o** as in the normal present tense (indicative), but is the same as the third person singular.

Fortunately, the endings are all familiar, and an easy way of recognising the subjunctive is when a verb seems to have an ending from 'the wrong set'! The same would apply if you needed to use the subjunctive yourself. Once you know one form, the others follow very predictably and easily.

Although there are irregular verbs, you will recognise them easily from their use as imperatives, and many are very common in everyday use.

## A Regular verbs

<b>yo form</b>	<b>hablar</b>	<b>yo form</b>	<b>comer</b>	<b>yo form</b>	<b>subir</b>
hablo	hable hables hable hablemos habléis hablen	como	coma comas coma comamos comáis coman	subo	suba subas suba subamos subáis suban

## B Stem-changing verbs

Stem-changing verbs are easy, because the stems change in the same places as in the present indicative. Here are some examples:

<b>e→ie/-ar</b>	<b>e→ie/-er</b>	<b>e→ie/-ir</b>	<b>e→i</b>	<b>o→ue</b>	<b>o→ue</b>	<b>o→ue</b>	<b>u→ue</b>
<b>cerrar</b>	<b>entender</b>	<b>preferir</b>	<b>pedir</b>	<b>contar</b>	<b>volver</b>	<b>dormir</b>	<b>jugar</b>
cierre	entienda	prefiera	pida	cuenta	vuelva	duerma	juegue
cierres	entiendas	prefieras	pidas	cuentas	vuelvas	duermas	juegues
cierre	entienda	prefiera	pidas	cuenta	vuelva	duerma	juegue
cerremos	entendamos	prefiramos	pidamos	contemos	volvamos	durmamos	juguemos
cerréis	entendáis	prefiráis	pidáis	contéis	volváis	durmáis	juguéis
cierren	entiendan	prefieran	pidan	cuenten	vuelvan	duerman	jueguen

## C Irregular verbs

The most useful irregular verbs are ones which should be familiar to you because you will commonly see and hear them as instructions in public places.

<b>infinitive</b>	<b>present yo form</b>	<b>subjunctive</b>
ir	voy	vaya
ser	soy	sea
coger	cojo	coja
conducir	conduzco	conduzca
sacar	saco	saque
decir	digo	diga
saber	sé	sepa
seguir	sigo	siga
hacer	hago	haga
oír	oigo	oiga
poner	pongo	ponga
salir	salgo	salga

<b>infinitive</b>	<b>present yo form</b>	<b>subjunctive</b>
tener	tengo	tenga
traer	traigo	traiga
venir	vengo	venga

## 1.6.2 Expressions which take the subjunctive

The following expressions are always followed by the subjunctive. Choose two to memorise to use as a pattern.

### Expressions of necessity

Hace falta que me vaya.

I have to go.

### Futurity and purpose

Tomaremos té cuando lleguemos a casa.

We'll have some tea when we get home.

Le llamaré para que sepa las noticias.

I'll call him so that he finds out the news.

Antes de que vengan los visitantes, tenemos que limpiar la cocina.

Before the visitors arrive, we must clean the kitchen.

Continúe hasta que llegue a un cruce.

Continue until you come to a crossroads.

### Wishes, influence or preferences

Quiero que llegue a tiempo.

I want him to be on time.

Prefiere que yo vaya allí.

He prefers me to go (there).

### Possibility

Es posible que pueda venir.

It is possible that he can come.

Es imposible que llegue tarde.

It is not possible for him to be late.

### Doubt and disbelief

No creo que esté enfermo.

I don't believe that he is ill.

No pienso que venga ella.

I don't think she will come.

### Emotion and judgement

Siento que haya sido herido.

I am sorry that he has been hurt.

Es una lástima que no puedas venir.

It's a pity that you can't come.

### Conjunctions or connectives such as aunque – although, even if

Aunque esté usted enfermo, debe presentarse en el tribunal.

Although you are ill, you have to go to court.



Essentially, the subjunctive is used whenever the statement is looking forward, or refers to an unfulfilled or hypothetical action. Ask yourself 'did it happen/is it happening/will it happen?' If the answer is 'no', or 'not yet', you probably need the subjunctive.

**Remember:** The subjunctive forms for **usted** and **ustedes** are used as imperative (command) forms, and those for **tú** and **vosotros/as** are used for negative commands.

### 1.6.3 Recognising the subjunctive

Even if you do not feel ready to use the subjunctive yet, it is useful to be able to recognise it when you hear it.

#### I Which verb is being used? Read the sentence and work out the infinitive of the word in italics.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>a</b> Es necesario que <i>venga</i> .                     | He must come.                                      |
| <b>b</b> No creo que <i>coja</i> el autobús.                 | I don't believe he'll take the bus.                |
| <b>c</b> Me alegra que <i>haga</i> buen tiempo hoy.          | I'm pleased that it's fine today.                  |
| <b>d</b> ¡Espero que os <i>sintáis</i> bienvenidos!          | I hope you feel welcome!                           |
| <b>e</b> Es posible que <i>estén</i> enfermos.               | It's possible that they are ill.                   |
| <b>f</b> Aunque <i>tenga</i> coche, siempre irá a pie.       | Even if she has a car, she will always go on foot. |
| <b>g</b> Hace falta que lo <i>sepa</i> ella.                 | She will have to know.                             |
| <b>h</b> Es imposible que se <i>pueda</i> terminar a tiempo. | It's impossible for it to be completed in time.    |
| <b>i</b> Dudo que <i>tengan</i> un coche nuevo.              | I don't think (I doubt) they have a new car.       |
| <b>j</b> Siento mucho que <i>queráis</i> partir.             | I am sorry that you want to go.                    |

#### II If you feel confident and adventurous, use the Subjunctive where necessary to translate this letter to an Agony Aunt:

Dear Marta,

I need you to give me some advice! I don't think it is a good idea for my son Sean to go on holiday to the mountains with his friend. I am afraid that they will get lost. I worry that the weather will be bad and that their clothes will not be suitable. I don't want Sean to get hurt! I am happy that my daughter Siobhan will go to Paris with her friend and her parents. However, I am worried that she will get bored with so many museums and art galleries! I want you to persuade me that I worry too much!

Sincerely,  
Kate Smith

### 1.6.4 ► Fast track: the subjunctive

The subjunctive is used to express wishes and desires, and after certain verbs and expressions.

- It usually conveys a feeling of negativity, uncertainty, doubt or indecision: *I don't want (that) ..., I am not sure that ..., it is possible that ..., etc.*
- It is usually preceded by a conjunction or connective or another verb and **que** – *that*. *I hope/wish/doubt that ...*
- This means that it is usually the second verb in the sentence.

The subjunctive of most verbs is made from the stem of the **yo** form of the present tense. Remove the **-o** and then add these endings: for **-ar** verbs **-e, -es, -e, -emos, -éis, -en**, and for **-er** and **-ir** verbs **-a, -as, -a, -amos, -áis, -an**.

Although many of the most commonly used verbs are irregular, some of their subjunctive forms are familiar as imperative forms in public notices and instructions.

You don't need to learn them, but it is useful to be able to recognise which verb they come from:

ir	vaya
ser	sea
coger	coja
conducir	conduzca
sacar	saque
saber	sepa
seguir	siga
oír	oiga
decir	diga
hacer	haga
poner	ponga
salir	salga
tener	tenga
traer	traiga
venir	venga

You can try to avoid using the subjunctive by:

- being positive and avoiding making negative statements!
- using **en mi opinión** or **a mi juicio** to express an opinion;
- using the infinitive instead of **que** + subjunctive where possible: **Hace falta que bebamos 2 litros de agua al día** (*We have to drink 2 litres of water a day*) becomes **Es necesario beber 2 litros de agua al día**.

- thinking of an easier way of saying it in English. Don't use two verbs joined by *that* in one sentence. Split it up and make two sentences: *I am sorry that he is ill* (**Siento que esté enfermo**) becomes ¿**Está enfermo?** ¡**Lo siento!**

Choose two or three examples to memorise and use them as a pattern.

Just when you think you have learnt all the tenses, you pick up a book or a newspaper and find that there are even more. Fortunately, you don't have to learn to use them to speak good Spanish. If you want to know more about these other tenses, go to *¡Acción Gramática!* or *¡Viva la Gramática!* (P. Turk and M. Zollo).

## 1.7 ▶ Fast track: verbs



**If you know when to use the different tenses, go on to 1.8.**

### A Present tense

You use the present tense to talk about what is happening now ...

Leo.

I am reading.

... and to express generalisations:

No veo muchos programas de televisión.

I don't watch many television programmes.

These are the question forms:

¿Lees (tú) un periódico?

Do you read a daily paper?

¿Ves (tú) ...?

Do you watch ...?

### B Perfect tense

You use the perfect tense to talk about what has happened in the very recent past.

He jugado al tenis.

I (have) played tennis.

He intentado.

I (have) tried.

These are the question forms:

¿Has jugado (tú)?

Have you played?

¿Has intentado (tú)?

Did you try?



## C Imperfect tense

You use the imperfect tense to talk about what happened in the past if:

- it was a habitual action:  
Jugaba cuando era pequeño/a. I used to play when I was young.
- it was an ongoing and interrupted action:  
Veía la televisión cuando oía a los vecinos gritar. I was watching television when I heard the neighbours shout.

These are the question forms:

¿Jugabas (tú) ...?	Did you use to play ...?
¿Veías la televisión cuando ...?	Were you watching television when ...?

## D Preterite tense

You use the preterite tense to talk about what has happened and finished in the past.

Jugué al tenis.	I played tennis.
Intenté.	I tried.

These are the question forms:

¿Jugaste (tú)?	Did you play?
¿Intentaste (tú)?	Did you try?

## E Future immediate tense

You use the near future or future immediate to say what you are about to do.

Voy a ir.	I am going to go.
Va a llegar.	He is going to arrive.

These are the question forms:

¿Vas a ir?	Are you going to go?
¿Va a llegar?	Is he going to arrive?

## F Future simple tense

The future simple tense is used to express intention or say what you will do in the future.

Arreglaré mi despacho la semana que viene.	I will tidy my office next week.
Pronto iremos a México.	Soon we will go to Mexico.

These are the question forms:

¿Qué harás (tú)?  
¿Cuándo llegarás?

What will you do?  
When will you arrive?

## G Imperative

The imperative is used to give orders or instructions.

¡Ve a buscar mis zapatillas!  
¡Cierre la puerta, por favor!  
Venid a verme pronto.  
Pongan sus maletas allí.

Fetch me my slippers! (tú)  
Shut the door, please! (usted)  
Come to see me soon. (vosotros)  
Put your suitcases there. (ustedes)

## H Interrogative

The interrogative is used to ask questions.

¿Tienes ...?  
¿Has visto ...?

Have you got a ...?  
Did you see ...?

¿Quiere usted entrar?  
¿Qué desea?

Do you want to come in?  
What would you like?

## I Conditional

The conditional is used to put things politely ...

Me gustaría ...  
¿Podría usted ayudarme?

I would like ...  
Could you help me?

... or to express conditions:

Yo te compraría un regalo si  
tuviera bastante dinero.

I would buy you a present if I  
had enough money.

## J Subjunctive

The subjunctive is used to express wishes and desires, and after certain verbs and expressions. It is usually preceded by another verb and **que**, meaning *that*. You can avoid having to use it yourself by keeping sentences simple.

Subjunctive verbs seem to have the 'wrong' endings: based on **-e** for **-ar** verbs, and based on **-a** for **-er** and **-ir** verbs.

Irregular subjunctives mostly sound familiar because they are often used for public notices and instructions. In any case, you should be able to tell which verb they come from:

sea – ser  
tenga – tener

vaya – ir  
haga – hacer

ponga – poner  
sepa – saber



### Recognising a verb

If a word that you don't know comes after a noun, the name of a person or a pronoun (**yo, tú, él, ella, usted, nosotros/as, vosotros/as, ellos, ellas** or **ustedes**), it is probably a verb.

- If it ends in **-ar, -er, -ir, -arse, -erse** or **-irse**, it is an infinitive.
- if it comes after a part of **haber** and ends in **-do**, it is a past participle of a verb.
- If it ends in **-o, -as, -a, -amos, -áis, -an**, or **-o, -es, -e, -emos, -éis, -en**, or **-o, -es, -e, -imos, -ís, -en**, it is probably a verb in the present tense.
- If it ends in **-aba, -abas, -ábamos, -abais, -aban** it is definitely an **ar** verb in the imperfect tense.
- If it ends in **-ré, -rás, -rá, -remos, -réis, -rán**, it is definitely a verb in the future tense.
- If it ends in **-ría, -rías, -ría, -ríamos, -ríais, -rían**, it is definitely a verb in the conditional tense.
- if it ends in **-aste, -ó, -asteis, -aron**, or **-í, -iste, -ió, -isteis, -ieron** or **-eron**, it is a preterite form of a verb.

## 1.8 Useful expressions using verbs



If you know all these, go on to 1.8.11 Fast track

### 1.8.1 To be or not to be: *ser* or *estar*?

A major issue in Spanish is choosing between the two verbs meaning *to be*. The easiest way to decide is to remember:

**ser** comes from Latin *esse* – *to be*, so use **ser** for what is of the *essence*, *essential*, i.e. to say what something or somebody *is* or is *like*.

I am a teacher, I am English,  
I am old.

Soy profesor, soy inglés, soy viejo.

**estar** comes from Latin *stare* – *to stand*, so use **estar** for position, *status* and *state* resulting from an action, therefore for saying *where* something or somebody is, what their *status* is, or what *state* they are in.

I am at home, I am married,  
I am tired.

Estoy en casa, estoy casado,  
estoy cansado.

## The passive with *ser*

The passive is used to refer to a person or thing having been the *victim* of an action or event, but from the *point of view* of the victim. For example, ‘the cat was rescued by a fireman’ – ‘el gato fue rescatado por un bombero’. As you can see, *ser* is used with the past participle. In fact Spanish has ways of avoiding this ‘true’ passive; most of these are dealt with in Sections 1.2.4 D, 1.2.7 A and 1.2.7 D.

However, where we know who did the action (the ‘agent’), you can just turn around the subject and object. For example: ‘Juan fue mordido por un perro’ – ‘Juan was bitten by a dog’ > ‘Un perro le mordió a Juan’ – ‘A dog bit Juan’. As you can see, the word ‘por’ is crucial here, as it indicates the ‘agent’, so if the sentence contains ‘por’, it could be expressed instead as in the example.

Note that *estar* can also be used with the past participle to describe the result of an action; here the past participle is in a sense an adjective. For example: ‘my iPhone was broken; now it is repaired’ – ‘mi iPhone estaba roto; ahora está reparado’. This is not strictly a passive form, but is very similar.

## 1.8.2 Special uses of *tener*

### tener

tengo	tenemos
tienes	tenéis
tiene	tienen

**Tener** (*to have*) is used in many expressions, often where we would use the verb *to be* in English. Here are some examples.

#### A Expressing age

**tener XX años** – *to be XX years old*

¿Cuántos años tienes?	How old are you?
Tengo 21 años.	I am 21.

#### B Expressing heat and cold

**tener calor/frío** – *to be hot/cold*

Tengo frío.	I am cold.
¿Tiene usted frío?	Are you cold?
Tienen mucho frío.	They are very cold.
¿Tienes calor?	Are you hot?
Tenéis calor, ¿verdad?	You are hot, aren't you?

## C Expressing hunger and thirst

**tener hambre/sed** – *to be hungry/thirsty*

Tengo hambre.

I am hungry.

¿Tienes sed?

Are you thirsty?

Ella tiene mucha sed.

She is very thirsty.

¿Tiene usted hambre?

Are you hungry?

No tenemos hambre.

We are not hungry.

¡Tenéis poca sed!

You are not very thirsty!

## D Expressing fear

**tener miedo de** – *to be afraid of*

¡Tengo miedo de ti!

I am afraid of you!

Tenemos miedo del relámpago.

We are afraid of the lightning.

Ellos no tienen miedo de nada.

They fear nothing.

## E Being right or wrong

**tener razón** – *to be right*

¡Tienes razón!

You are right!

Tengo razón, ¡a que sí!

I bet I am right!

No tenéis razón.

You are not right/You are wrong.

## F Being in a hurry

**tener prisa** – *to be in a hurry*

Tengo prisa.

I am in a hurry.

¿Tienen ustedes mucha prisa?

Are you in much of a hurry?

## G Being tired

**tener sueño** – *to be tired*

Tengo mucho sueño.

I am very tired.

¿Tienen ustedes sueño?

Are you tired?

## H Being lucky or unlucky

**tener suerte** – *to be lucky*

¡Tienes suerte!

You are lucky!

Tenemos mucha suerte, ¿verdad?

We are very lucky, aren't we?

No tienen suerte.

They are not lucky.

Tiene mala suerte.

He is unlucky.

## I Feeling like doing something

**tener ganas de** (+ infinitive) – *to feel like*

¿Tienes ganas de comer ahora?

Do you feel like eating now?

Tenía ganas de reír.

I felt like laughing.

## J Having to do something

**tener que** (+ infinitive) – *to have to, must*

Tengo que salir.

I must go out.

¿Tienen que hablar con el director?

Do they have to talk to the principal?

Mi madre tuvo que ir al hospital ayer.

My mother had to go to hospital yesterday.

## K Being painful

**tener dolor de** – *to have a pain in the .../to have a bad/sore ...*

Tengo dolor de cabeza.

I have a headache.

Tengo dolor de oídos.

I have an earache.

Ayer tuve dolor de pies.

Yesterday my feet ached.

**NB: You can also say me duele(n):**

me duele el pie – my foot hurts; me duelen los pies – my feet hurt

**Parts of the body which might hurt:**

singular	plural	meaning
la cabeza		head
el ojo	los ojos	eye(s)
el oído	los oídos	ear(s) (inner)
la oreja	las orejas	ear(s) (outer)
el diente	los dientes	tooth, teeth (front)
la muela	las muelas	tooth, teeth (molars)
la mano	las manos	hand(s)
el dedo	los dedos	finger(s)
el brazo	los brazos	arm(s)
la pierna	las piernas	leg(s)
la rodilla	las rodillas	knee(s)
el pie	los pies	foot, feet
la espalda		back

## I How would you say the following?

**a** I have a headache.**b** Have you got a toothache? (tú)**c** Her foot hurts.**d** My arms ache.**e** His knee hurts.**f** Have you got a headache? (usted)**g** She has earache.**h** Do your eyes hurt? (vosotros)**i** Does your back hurt? (ustedes)**j** He has backache.

## Checklist

These expressions take **tener** in Spanish:

tener ... años	to be ... years old
tener calor/frío	to be hot/cold
tener hambre/sed	to be hungry/thirsty
tener miedo de	to be afraid of
tener razón	to be right/wrong
tener prisa	to be in a hurry
tener sueño	to be tired
tener suerte	to be lucky
tener ganas de ...	to feel like ...
tener que ...	to have to ...
tener dolor de ...	to have a pain in the ...

## II How would you say the following?

- a** We are right.
- b** You are wrong. (tú)
- c** I am hot.
- d** He is thirsty.
- e** They are hungry.
- f** We are cold.
- g** I am thirsty.
- h** You are very tired. (usted)
- i** We are lucky.
- j** I am in a hurry.

and some more:

- k** They are wrong.
- l** I am very cold.
- m** They are hot.
- n** We are thirsty.
- o** I am afraid of spiders.
- p** Are you thirsty? (tú)
- q** Are you cold? (usted)
- r** Do you feel like eating? (vosotros)
- s** Are you hungry? (ustedes)
- t** Are you right? (tú)
- u** You are wrong! (usted)
- v** Are you afraid? (vosotros)
- w** I am not afraid.
- x** He is not afraid.
- y** We have to go.
- z** He is always right.

### 1.8.3 There is/There are: *hay*

In Spanish, you say (*there*) *has* instead of *there is/are*. Note that the Spanish does not change for plural, but being an 'odd' part of **haber**, it can be used in other tenses:

Hay mucho que hacer.  
 ¿Hay fruta?  
 Hay una pera ...  
 ... y hay muchas naranjas.  
 No había pan.  
 Había varios pasteles.  
 ¿Habrá algo más?  
 Sí, habrá unas galletas.  
 Ha habido un accidente.  
 Ayer hubo una tormenta.

There is a lot to do.  
 Is there any fruit?  
 There is one pear ...  
 ... and there are lots of oranges.  
 There was no bread.  
 There were several cakes.  
 Will there be anything else?  
 Yes, there will be some biscuits.  
 There has been an accident.  
 Yesterday there was a storm.

#### I Now you try it.

**a** No \_\_\_ banco, pero \_\_\_ un cajero automático.

There isn't a bank but there is a cash machine.

**b** \_\_\_ muchas cajas en el supermercado, pero no \_\_\_ muchos cajeros ...

There are lots of checkouts at the supermarket but there aren't many cashiers ...

**c** ... pero afortunadamente, esta mañana no \_\_\_ colas.

... but luckily today there wasn't a queue.

**d** Antes \_\_\_ un autobús escolar, pero ahora no; no \_\_\_ suficientes niños ...

Before, there used to be a school bus, but not now; there aren't enough children ...

**e** ... esta mañana sólo \_\_\_ tres niños esperando un taxi.

... this morning there were only three children waiting for a taxi.

### 1.8.4 To know: *conocer* or *saber*?

There are two verbs meaning *to know* in Spanish – to know a fact: **saber** and to know a person or thing: **conocer**.

**Saber** is to know how to do something (as a result of learning how to do it).

sé, sabes, sabe, sabemos, sabéis, saben

Sé que Ana está casada.

I know Ana is married.

Sé conducir.

I know how to drive a car.

Sabía cocinar.

I used to know how to cook.

**Conocer** is to know a person, thing or place (to recognise by seeing, hearing, tasting or touching):

conozco, conoces, conoce, conocemos, conocéis, conocen

Le conozco muy bien.

I know him very well.

Mi amigo no conocía Madrid.

My friend didn't know Madrid.



**I** Which verb are you going to use? Use the appropriate part of the present tense.

- a** Yo \_\_\_\_ al señor Palomares desde hace mucho tiempo.  
**b** Su hijo \_\_\_\_ a mi hijo.  
**c** Nuestros niños \_\_\_\_ enviar correo electrónico.  
**d** Nosotros \_\_\_\_ a la familia.  
**e** Mi mujer \_\_\_\_ a su mujer.  
**f** Mis padres \_\_\_\_ a sus padres.  
**g** Ellos \_\_\_\_ bien la región donde viven.  
**h** Mi mujer y yo, no \_\_\_\_ enviar e-mails.  
**i** Mis padres no \_\_\_\_ utilizar un móvil.  
**j** Mi hija \_\_\_\_ enviar fotos con su móvil.  
**k** Yo no \_\_\_\_ enviar fotos por e-mail.

### 1.8.5 Impersonal verbs

Some Spanish verbs are used impersonally. These include the 'back-to-front verbs' **gustar**, **encantar** and others (see 1.2.2 G), which are used with the thing liked, loved, etc. as the subject:

I like coffee.

Me gusta el café.

I love Spanish wines.

Me encantan los vinos españoles.

### 1.8.6 To take, bring, look for, fetch, meet a person

These English verbs can be translated in various ways.

- **coger/tomar** – *to take transport*

Cojo/Tomo el autobús.

I am taking the bus.

- **llevar** – *to carry, take away (something you can carry) (also: to wear)*

una pizza para llevar

a take-away pizza

– *to take (someone somewhere)*

Llevé a mi tía al aeropuerto.

I took my aunt to the airport.

- **buscar** – *to look for (something or someone); to fetch (someone)*

Iré a buscarte a las diez.

I'll come and fetch/meet you at 10 o'clock.

- **traer** – *to bring (something you can carry, or someone)*

Te he traído un pastel.

I have brought you a cake.

Trae a un amigo a la fiesta esta tarde si quieres.

Bring a friend to the party tonight, if you like.



This phrase will help you remember *to take away*:



### 1.8.7 To remember

- **recordar** – *to remember, to recall*

This verb holds no surprises, but the following verb can also be used when more of an ‘effort to remember’ is implied, especially for remembering people.

- **acordarse de** – *to remember (literally: to remind yourself of) (something or someone)*

In Spanish, you remind yourself *of* something:

Me acuerdo de Marcos.

I remember Marcos.

Él no se acuerda de mí.

He doesn't remember me.

Nos acordamos del día en que él  
llegó por primera vez.

We remember the day when he  
came for the first time.

Siempre recordaré el momento en  
que sufrí mi accidente.

I'll always remember the  
moment when I had the  
accident.

Lo recuerdo.

I remember it.

Mis padres no lo recuerdan.

My parents don't remember it.

#### I How would you say the following?

- I remember John.
- He remembers me.
- He remembers my house.
- We both remember the holidays.
- I remember his wife.
- I remember her smile.
- My children remember her.

NB: All of these could be expressed using either **recordar** or **acordarse de**.



The opposite of **recordar** and **acordarse de** is **olvidar** – to forget; it is very easy to use, being a regular **-ar** verb.

### 1.8.8 Negative expressions

Negative statements include saying what you don't do, and expressions with *no*, *nothing*, *never*, *nobody*, etc.

How to say you don't do something

You already know to put **no** in front of the verb to express *not*.

No sé.

I don't know.

No hablo español.

I don't speak Spanish.

No como carne.

I don't eat meat.

Él no bebe vino.

He doesn't drink wine.

No viven en Madrid.

They don't live in Madrid.

¿Usted no está casado/a?

You aren't married?

Other negative expressions

These are all 'double negatives', where **no** goes in front of the verb and the other negative word after the verb.

**no ... nunca/jamás** – *never* (**nunca** is the more common)

Ella no ha ido nunca a Tenerife.

She has never been to Tenerife.

Nunca ha ido a Tenerife.



If you start with the negative word you don't need the marker **no**:  
**Nunca he ido** – *I have never been*.

**No ... nada** – *nothing/not anything*

No hice nada.

I didn't do anything.

**no ... nadie** – *nobody/no one*

No vio a nadie.

He didn't see anyone.

NB: Note the use of the personal **a** even in front of *nobody*!

**no ... ninguno(ningún)/a/os/as** – *no*

No tengo ningún amigo.

I have no friends.

**no ... ni ... ni** – *not ... either ... or/neither ... nor*

No tengo ni tiempo ni dinero.

I have neither time nor money.



The idea of *any* in *not any* is not translated: **No tengo dinero** – *I haven't any money*.



Note that *nada* and *nadie* can both start a sentence as the subject of the sentence, e.g. *nada* tengo – I have nothing, and *nadie* tiene tiempo – nobody has time. Also, unlike English, two negatives don't cancel each other out! So: “nunca sabe nada” = “he never knows anything” and does not mean “he never knows nothing”, i.e. “he knows something”.

**I** How would you say the following? If possible, say them aloud so that you can get used to the sound of them. Then cover up the English, read them again and think about the meaning. Finally cover up the Spanish and translate the whole sentence.

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| <b>a</b> I have never been to Spain.       | Yo ____ fui ____ a España.         |
| <b>b</b> They didn't hurt anyone.          | Ellos ____ hicieron daño a ____ .  |
| <b>c</b> I never see Alicia.               | ____ veo [____] a Alicia.          |
| <b>d</b> They have nothing in their house. | ____ tienen ____ en su casa.       |
| <b>e</b> You have never learned to swim?   | ¿____ aprendiste ____ a nadar?     |
| <b>f</b> I don't see anybody.              | Yo ____ veo a ____ .               |
| <b>g</b> She never rides a bike.           | Ella ____ monta ____ en bicicleta. |
| <b>h</b> I have nothing in my pocket.      | ____ tengo ____ en mi bolsillo.    |
| <b>i</b> I have never been to Mallorca.    | ____ he ido a Mallorca.            |
| <b>j</b> Nobody is at home.                | ____ está en casa.                 |

**II** Match up these sentences.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>a</b> We haven't anything to eat.       | <b>i</b> No he tenido tiempo para ir al pueblo. |
| <b>b</b> Nobody has been shopping.         | <b>ii</b> No hay ni pan ni queso.               |
| <b>c</b> I didn't have time to go to town. | <b>iii</b> No tengo dinero.                     |
| <b>d</b> There isn't any bread or cheese.  | <b>iv</b> No tenemos nada para comer.           |
| <b>e</b> You never go to the supermarket.  | <b>v</b> No vas nunca al supermercado.          |
| <b>f</b> I haven't any money.              | <b>vi</b> Nadie ha ido de compras.              |



Remember, there is no need for *any* after a negative in Spanish.

### 1.8.9 Question words and word order

¿Cómo?

How?

¿Dónde?

Where?

¿Adónde?

Where to?

¿Cuándo?

When?

¿Por qué?	Why?
¿Cuánto/a/os/as?	How much/many?
¿Cuánto tiempo?	How long?
¿Qué?	What?
¿Quién?	Who?
¿A quién?	Whom?

After these question words the verb follows, and you invert the order of the subject and the verb if a separate subject is expressed. (See 1.3.2.)

¿Adónde vais?	Where are you going?
¿Cómo va a Granada?	How is he going to Granada?
¿Por qué está en Almería?	Why is she in Almería?
¿Cuándo salís?	When are you leaving?
¿Qué hacéis vosotros?	What are you doing?
¿A quién conocen ustedes?	Who do you know?
¿Cuántos dormitorios tienes tú?	How many bedrooms do you have?
¿Qué vas a hacer?	What are you going to do?

### I Which question word would you use?

- a ¿\_\_\_ vive el señor Vicente?
- b ¿\_\_\_ se llama su mujer?
- c ¿\_\_\_ sale para Londres?
- d ¿\_\_\_ va a Londres?
- e ¿\_\_\_ va a hacer en Londres?
- f ¿\_\_\_ tiene una cita en el banco?
- g ¿\_\_\_ días se va a quedar en Londres?
- h ¿\_\_\_ conoce en Londres?

### 1.8.10 Since (*desde hace*); to have just (*acabar de*)

In these expressions, you use a different tense in Spanish from the one you would expect to use in English.

#### A *Desde hace* – since

In English, when we want to say we have been doing something for a certain length of time, we use the past tense. In Spanish, because they have been doing it since (a year, etc.) and still are, they use the present tense.

Vivo aquí desde hace seis años.	I have lived here for six years.
Aprende el español desde hace dos años.	He has been learning Spanish for two years.
Tengo este coche desde hace un año.	I have had this car for a year.
Esperan desde hace una hora.	They have been waiting for an hour.
Estoy aquí desde hace dos días.	I have been here for two days.

**I** How would you answer these questions? Remember to use the present tense in your answers.

- a** ¿Desde hace cuánto tiempo vives aquí?  
**b** ¿Desde hace cuánto tiempo aprendes el español?  
**c** ¿Desde hace cuánto tiempo conoces a tu mejor amigo/a?

**B** *acabar de* – to have just

Instead of using the past tense and saying *I have just seen him*, in Spanish you use the verb **acabar** meaning *to finish*. This verb is used in the present tense followed by **de** + an infinitive, or in the imperfect if the time frame is in the past.

Acabo de llegar a casa.	I have just got in.
Acaba de telefonear.	He has just rung.
Acabamos de ver una película horrible.	We have just seen a dreadful film.
Acababa de llegar mi novia.	My girlfriend had just arrived.
Acabábamos de recibir la noticia.	We had just heard the news.

**II** How would you say the following?

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>a</b> Pepe ___ de volver.               | Pepe has just got back.                |
| <b>b</b> Mi amigo ___ de telefonear.       | My friend has just rung me.            |
| <b>c</b> ___ de cenar bien.                | We have just eaten a good dinner.      |
| <b>d</b> Mis padres ___ de vender su casa. | My parents have just sold their house. |
| <b>e</b> ___ de terminar mi trabajo.       | I have just finished my work.          |

**III** Translate this conversation using as many as possible of the useful verb expressions, in different forms:

I have just met (encontrarse con) my friend Joe in town; I have not seen him for ten years. I remember when we were at school together; he is one year older than me: I am 23 and he is 24.

“How are you, and where do you live now?” I asked.

He replied “I’m well, but I live in London now, where I work for a travel agency. So, I never see any of my friends, in fact we haven’t seen anybody since we left the US.”

I said “I have never been to London. I’ll fetch my wife – she is in that shop. If you’re thirsty – shall we go for a drink?”.

“Good idea, in fact I’m hungry too; I feel like having something to eat. There’s a good restaurant here. If I can find (hallar) my wife I’ll bring her too”.

“We’ll see you in the restaurant in 10 minutes!”

## 1.8.11 ► Fast track: useful expressions using verbs

### A Special uses of *tener*

In Spanish, there are many expressions which use **tener**, often where we use the verb *to be* in English. The most common ones are:

Tengo ... años	I am ... years old
Tengo ganas de (+ infinitive)	I would like to
Tengo miedo	I am afraid
Tengo calor/frío	I am hot/cold
Tengo hambre/sed	I am hungry/thirsty
Tengo razón	I am right
Tengo que (+ infinitive)	I have to

### B How to say 'there is/there are'

hay	there is/there are
había	there was/were

### C How to say 'bring/take/fetch'

coger/tomar	to take – <i>cojo/tomo el autobús</i>
traer	to take/bring (someone/something over here)
llevar	to take (someone/something away)
buscar	to fetch/meet (someone)

### D How to say 'remember'

recordar	to remember, recall
acordarse de	to remember (lit: to remind yourself of (someone or something))

### E Negatives

**No** is used by itself for straight negation (I have *not* ...), and for *no* to start a sentence.

Where other negative expressions are used, **no** is put in front of the verb and **nada, nadie, nunca, ninguno (ningún)/a/ os/as, ni ... ni** come after the verb.

no ... nada	nothing
No hace nada.	He isn't doing anything.
no ... nadie	nobody
No he visto a nadie.	I didn't see anyone.
no ... nunca	never
No he esquiado nunca.	I have never skied.

## F Question words

These words introduce a question:

¿Cómo?	How?
¿Dónde?	Where?
¿Adónde?	Where to?
¿Cuándo?	When?
¿Por qué?	Why?
¿Cuánto/a/os/as?	How much/many?
¿Cuánto tiempo?	How long?
¿Qué?	What?
¿Quién?	Who?

The subject (where there is one expressed) and verb are inverted after a question word.

¿Cuándo va tu padre a Algeciras?  
¿Adónde vas tú?

## G Desde hace – since

You use **desde hace** to ask/answer the question *how long*:

¿Desde hace cuánto tiempo vives en Extremadura?	How long have you lived in Extremadura?
Vivo allí desde hace diez años.	I have lived there ten years. (lit: I live there since 10 years).

In Spanish, the verb is in the present tense because you still live there.

## H Acabar de – to have just

Acabo de llegar.	I have just arrived. (literally: I am finishing arriving.)
Acaba de hacerlo.	He has just done it. (literally: He is finishing doing it.)



# 2 NOUNS AND DETERMINERS

How to recognise nouns



**If you know what nouns and determiners are, go on to 2.1.**

Nouns are naming words. They tell you who or what somebody is (e.g. *he is a soldier, Mrs Burton is my mother*) or what something is (e.g. *it is a table, it is a rainbow*).



You can recognise nouns because they can have words like *the, a* or *this* in front of them, e.g. *the house, a dog, this car*.

Sometimes the same word can be a noun or a verb.

*the drink – to drink*

*the walk – to walk*

**I** There are ten nouns in this text. Can you find them all?

My sister has her own restaurant. She goes to the market each morning to buy fresh vegetables to make the soup for lunch. The other dishes she has prepared the night before and left in the fridge ready to cook.

A determiner is a word which comes in front of a noun to tell you (determine) which one it is: **the coat; a coat; my coat; your coat; this coat; which coat?**

## 2.1 Nouns and gender



**If you know about the gender of nouns, go on to 2.2.**

In Spanish, all nouns are either masculine or feminine.

The word for *bottle* – **botella** – is a feminine word.

The word for *plate* – **plato** – is a masculine word.

[www.cervantes.ir](http://www.cervantes.ir)

Feminine words are usually indicated by *nf* in the dictionary (*n* – noun *f* – feminine) and masculine words by *nm*.

## 2.2

### Nouns and the words for 'the': *el* and *la*

The word *the* is a determiner. It is also called the definite article because it refers to a definite thing, e.g. *the* house you live in and not just any house.



**If you know about *el* and *la* and the gender of nouns, go on to 2.3.**

In Spanish, all nouns are either masculine or feminine.

- The word for *the* in front of a masculine noun is **el**.

el niño	the boy
el bolso	the bag

- The word for *the* in front of a feminine noun is **la**.

la niña	the girl
la puerta	the door

**I** Put the correct form (**el** or **la**) in front of these.

- |                               |                     |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>a</b> ____ coche (m)       | car                 |
| <b>b</b> ____ aceituna (f)    | olive               |
| <b>c</b> ____ bocadillo (m)   | sandwich            |
| <b>d</b> ____ bolígrafo (m)   | ballpoint pen, biro |
| <b>e</b> ____ ciudad (f)      | town, city          |
| <b>f</b> ____ pez (m)         | fish                |
| <b>g</b> ____ acera (f)       | pavement            |
| <b>h</b> ____ autopista (f)   | motorway            |
| <b>i</b> ____ ferrocarril (m) | railway             |
| <b>j</b> ____ deporte (m)     | sport               |
| <b>k</b> ____ billete (m)     | ticket              |

**II** Now do the same for these places.

- |                                      |                |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|
| <b>a</b> ____ casa (f)               | house          |
| <b>b</b> ____ gasolinera (f)         | petrol station |
| <b>c</b> ____ estación (f)           | station        |
| <b>d</b> ____ calle (f)              | street         |
| <b>e</b> ____ avenida (f)            | avenue         |
| <b>f</b> ____ garaje (m)             | garage         |
| <b>g</b> ____ tienda (f)             | shop           |
| <b>h</b> ____ banco (m)              | bank           |
| <b>i</b> ____ oficina de correos (f) | post office    |
| <b>j</b> ____ puente (m)             | bridge         |

When a feminine noun begins with a stressed **ha** or **a** you have to use **el** instead of **la**.

el agua  
el hambre

the water  
the hunger

### III Fill in the gaps with **el** or **la**.

**a** \_\_\_\_ aceite (m)  
**b** \_\_\_\_ helado (m)  
**c** \_\_\_\_ abrigo (m)  
**d** \_\_\_\_ baño (m)  
**e** \_\_\_\_ ensalada (f)  
**f** \_\_\_\_ oficina (f)  
**g** \_\_\_\_ burro (m)  
**h** \_\_\_\_ médico (m)  
**i** \_\_\_\_ agenda (f)  
**j** \_\_\_\_ entrada (f)  
**k** \_\_\_\_ desayuno (m)  
**l** \_\_\_\_ viaje (m)  
**m** \_\_\_\_ agua (f)  
**n** \_\_\_\_ zumo (m)  
**o** \_\_\_\_ hombre (m)  
**p** \_\_\_\_ carta (f)  
**q** \_\_\_\_ escuela (f)  
**r** \_\_\_\_ mano (f)  
**s** \_\_\_\_ ventana (f)  
**t** \_\_\_\_ pollo (m)

oil  
ice-cream  
coat  
bath  
salad  
office  
donkey  
doctor  
diary  
entrance  
breakfast  
journey  
water  
juice  
man  
letter, menu  
school  
hand  
window  
chicken

#### 2.2.1 The neutral article: *lo*

Abstract and general nouns can be made by using the indeterminate form **lo** and the masculine form of the adjective (although this can refer to both genders).

lo inesperado  
lo contrario  
lo bueno

the unexpected  
the opposite  
the good

## 2.3

Nouns and the words for 'the' in the plural: *los* and *las*



**If you know about the plural, go on to 2.4.**

In the plural, the word for *the* with all feminine words is **las** and the word for *the* with all masculine nouns is **los**.

singular	plural
el gato la casa	los gatos las casas

To make the plural of the noun in English, we usually add an **-s**. In Spanish, most words make their plural by adding **-s** unless they end in a consonant, in which case they add **-es**.

la piscina → las piscinas; el perro → los perros; la catedral → las catedrales

Some singular masculine nouns are non-gender-specific in the plural.

el hermano – the brother → los hermanos – the siblings, brothers *and* sisters

### 2.3.1 Common irregular plurals

The following categories of nouns form their plurals in different ways.

- Nouns ending in **-z** form their plural by changing the **z** to **c** and adding **-es**.  
el pez – the fish → los peces – the fish(es)
- Some nouns lose or gain an accent in the plural.  
el inglés – the Englishman → los ingleses – the English people  
el joven – the young man → los jóvenes – the young people
- Nouns which end in **-s** and have an unstressed last syllable don't change in the plural.  
la crisis – the crisis → las crisis – the crises

#### I Put these words into the plural.

<b>a</b> el pez	the fish
<b>b</b> el gato	the cat
<b>c</b> el barco	the boat
<b>d</b> la terraza	the terrace
<b>e</b> el padre	the parent
<b>f</b> la mosca	the fly
<b>g</b> el castillo	the castle
<b>h</b> el alemán	the German
<b>i</b> el español	the Spaniard

#### II Describe your place of study or workplace in about 60 words, using each of *el*, *la*, *los* and *las* 3 times each. Here are a couple of introductions to get you started:

- a** Estudio en *la* universidad de Harvard; me gustan *las* matemáticas, pero odio *la* informática; ¡*el* profesor es muy antipático!
- b** Trabajo en *el* supermercado local; *el* jefe me trata bien, y no tengo que trabajar *los* fines de semana, es muy importante para *la* gente con familia.

## 2.4 Nouns and the words for 'a': *un* and *una*

The word *a* is a determiner. It is also called the indefinite article because it refers to any *one* item and not a specific one, e.g. *a* bottle of red wine, not *the* bottle that you have chosen specifically.



**If you know all about *un* and *una*, go on to 2.5.**

- The word for *a* in front of a masculine noun is ***un***.  
un vaso    a glass
- The word for *a* in front of a feminine noun is ***una***.  
una taza    a cup

**I** Imagine you are talking about your family. How would you say you have one of all these?

Tengo ...

- |                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| <b>a</b> ____ hermano | <b>f</b> ____ tía    |
| <b>b</b> ____ hermana | <b>g</b> ____ suegro |
| <b>c</b> ____ abuelo  | <b>h</b> ____ prima  |
| <b>d</b> ____ abuela  | <b>i</b> ____ suegra |
| <b>e</b> ____ tío     | <b>j</b> ____ perro  |

### 2.4.1 Nouns with masculine and feminine forms

Some nouns have a masculine and a feminine form. The masculine form usually ends in **-o**, and to form the feminine form you usually replace the **-o** with an **-a**, or add an **-a** if it ends in a consonant. If the word ends in **-e** there is no change, and for nouns ending in **-ista** there is no change either.

un amigo → una amiga	a friend
un empleado → una empleada	an employee
un vecino → una vecina	a neighbour
un bailarador → una bailadora	a dancer
un estudiante → una estudiante	a student
un cantante → una cantante	a singer
un automovilista → una automovilista	a car driver

**But**

un actor → una actriz	an actor/an actress
-----------------------	---------------------



In Spanish, you omit the indefinite article when stating people's occupations, religions, nationality, etc.

Soy estudiante.	I am a student.
Es americano.	He is American.
Juan es médico.	Juan is a doctor.
¿Eres católico?	Are you a Catholic?

## I How would you say the following?

- a Juan is a dancer.
- b Rodríguez is a student.
- c Ramón is a singer.
- d Enrique is an actor.
- e Estrellita is a Catholic.
- f Pilar is an employee.
- g She is a car driver.

To talk about more than one thing in English we say *some* or *any*. Usually this word is just omitted in Spanish. The plural forms of **un** and **una** (**unos** and **unas**) can be used to mean *some*, but these are not generally expressed.

Tengo apartamentos.

I have some flats.

Tengo casas.

I have some houses.

If you are saying you haven't any of something, you don't need a word for *any*:

No tengo apartamentos.

I haven't any flats.

No tengo casas.

I haven't any houses.

## 2.5

### How to tell if a noun is masculine or feminine

It is not always possible to tell whether a word is masculine or feminine in Spanish. It is helpful to learn nouns along with their word for *the* (**el** or **la**). There are also some other ways of working out if a word is masculine or feminine:

- If you hear **el** or **un** being used in front of it, it is masculine, unless it is a feminine noun beginning with a stressed 'a' or 'ha', such as '¡tengo un hambre que me mata!
- If you hear **la** or **una** being used in front of it, it is feminine.
- If you hear **los** or **unos** being used in front of it, it is masculine plural.
- If you hear **las** or **unas** being used in front of it, it is feminine plural.

In addition to this, there are some rules – but there are also a lot of exceptions! The following endings usually mean that a noun is masculine:

-o	el año	year
-e	el viaje	voyage/trip
-l	el metal	metal
-n	el atún	tuna
-r	el bar	bar
-s	el país	country

Apart from a few exceptions, the following endings usually mean that a noun is feminine:

-a	la boca	mouth
-ad	la verdad	truth
-z	la vez	time/turn
-ción	la noción	notion/idea
-sión	la precisión	precision
-ud	la salud	health

However, because there are a lot of exceptions to these rules, you still can't be certain of a noun's gender unless you check it in the dictionary. When you look up a word in the dictionary, it usually tells you the gender of the word in brackets after it: **casa** (f) *house*; **pueblo** (m) *village*.

**I** Now put **el** or **la** in front of these words. The rules above will help you.

- a** \_\_\_ emoción
- b** \_\_\_ ensalada
- c** \_\_\_ jabón
- d** \_\_\_ mariposa
- e** \_\_\_ manifestación
- f** \_\_\_ hotel
- g** \_\_\_ ciudad
- h** \_\_\_ francés
- i** \_\_\_ vejez
- j** \_\_\_ cuervo
- k** \_\_\_ cicatriz
- l** \_\_\_ carrera
- m** \_\_\_ panadería
- n** \_\_\_ camisa
- o** \_\_\_ zapatero
- p** \_\_\_ mercado
- q** \_\_\_ luz
- r** \_\_\_ trabajo
- s** \_\_\_ autopista
- t** \_\_\_ nación

## 2.6 'My', 'your', 'his', 'her', etc.: possessive adjectives



If you know all about these words, go on to 2.7.

These are words for saying what belongs to whom: *my coat*, *his umbrella*, *your briefcase*, *their house*, *our cat*, etc.

In English, we only have one form of each: *my*, *your*, *his*, *her*, *our*, *their*. In Spanish, there are singular and plural forms to agree with their nouns (but no masculine and feminine forms except in the case of **nuestro/a** and **vuestro/a**).

	singular		plural	
my	mi		mis	
your (fam. sing.)	tu		tus	
his/her/its	su		sus	
your (formal sing.)	su		sus	
	masc	fem	masc	fem
our	nuestro	nuestra	nuestros	nuestras
your (fam. plural)	vuestro	vuestra	vuestros	vuestras
their	su		sus	
your (formal plural)	su		sus	

### 2.6.1 My (*mi*, *mis*)

The word for *my* agrees in number but not in gender with the person or thing it is describing. This means that you use the singular form (**mi**) with singular nouns of either gender:

mi hermano	my brother
mi madre	my mother
mi perro	my dog

*My* in front of plural nouns is **mis**, in both masculine and feminine:

mis gatos	my cats
mis hermanas	my sisters



**I Mi or mis?**

- a** \_\_\_\_ gatos
- b** \_\_\_\_ hermana
- c** \_\_\_\_ madre
- d** \_\_\_\_ padres
- e** \_\_\_\_ libros
- f** \_\_\_\_ casa
- g** \_\_\_\_ abuelos
- h** \_\_\_\_ tarjeta
- i** \_\_\_\_ peces
- j** \_\_\_\_ pluma

**II Now do the same for your clothes ...**

- a** \_\_\_\_ pantalón
- b** \_\_\_\_ camisa
- c** \_\_\_\_ jersey
- d** \_\_\_\_ calcetines
- e** \_\_\_\_ zapatos
- f** \_\_\_\_ chaqueta
- g** \_\_\_\_ abrigo
- h** \_\_\_\_ bufanda
- i** \_\_\_\_ guantes
- j** \_\_\_\_ paraguas

**III ... and your family. Imagine you are showing someone photographs of your family. What would you say?**

Es mi .../Son mis ...

- a** \_\_\_\_ niños
- b** \_\_\_\_ marido
- c** \_\_\_\_ mujer
- d** \_\_\_\_ padre
- e** \_\_\_\_ madre
- f** \_\_\_\_ hermana
- g** \_\_\_\_ hermanos
- h** \_\_\_\_ abuelos
- i** \_\_\_\_ primo
- j** \_\_\_\_ hijo
- k** \_\_\_\_ hijas

**2.6.2 Your (tu, tus)**

You can only use **tu** or **tus** (the familiar singular form) when speaking to a child or pet, or someone you know very well.



If you are not going to need this form (it behaves just like the **mi/mis** form), go on to 2.6.3.

The words for *your* (**tu, tus**) are similar to the words for *my* (**mi, mis**) and behave in the same way.

**I** Put **tu** or **tus** in front of these words.

Es tu .../Son tus ...

- |                        |                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>a</b> ____ niños    | <b>f</b> ____ abuelos |
| <b>b</b> ____ padre    | <b>g</b> ____ hija    |
| <b>c</b> ____ madre    | <b>h</b> ____ hijos   |
| <b>d</b> ____ hermanas | <b>i</b> ____ perros  |
| <b>e</b> ____ hermano  | <b>j</b> ____ gato    |

**II** How would you ask what they are called?

¿Cómo se llama tu ...?/¿Cómo se llaman tus ...?

- |                        |
|------------------------|
| <b>a</b> ____ colegas  |
| <b>b</b> ____ colega   |
| <b>c</b> ____ amigo    |
| <b>d</b> ____ amigas   |
| <b>e</b> ____ amigos   |
| <b>f</b> ____ amiga    |
| <b>g</b> ____ hermano  |
| <b>h</b> ____ hermanas |
| <b>i</b> ____ abuelos  |
| <b>j</b> ____ padres   |

### 2.6.3 His, her and its (*su, sus*)

The words for *his/her* (**su, sus**) rhyme with **tu** and **tus** and are used in the same way.

Notice that:

- **su hermano** means both *his brother* and *her brother*;
- **su hermana** means both *his sister* and *her sister*;
- **sus amigos** means both *his friends* and *her friends*.

These words are also used for *your* when you are using the formal **usted** and **ustedes** forms of address (see 2.6.7)



If you know all about **su** and **sus**, go on to 2.6.4.

**I** Talk about Tomás by filling in the right word (**su, sus**).

- |  |
|--|
| <b>a</b> ____ amigas se llaman Pilar y María.      |
| <b>b</b> ____ primo se llama José.                 |
| <b>c</b> ____ hermano es grande.                   |
| <b>d</b> ____ madre es escultora.                  |
| <b>e</b> ____ padre trabaja en el Banco de España. |

- f** \_\_\_\_ hermanas son profesoras.  
**g** \_\_\_\_ hermano menor tiene sólo ocho años.  
**h** \_\_\_\_ deporte favorito es el tenis.  
**i** \_\_\_\_ comidas favoritas son la pizza 'Cuatro estaciones' y los espaguetis.  
**j** \_\_\_\_ color favorito es el azul oscuro.



In sentences like these, you can't tell the gender of a noun by the (determiner) word in front of it, but if there is an adjective attached, this will usually tell you all you need to know!

## II Now do the same for Alejandra's family and friends.

- a** \_\_\_\_ amiga se llama Conchita.  
**b** \_\_\_\_ novio se llama Esteban.  
**c** \_\_\_\_ hermanos se llaman Javier y Ramón.  
**d** \_\_\_\_ hermana se llama Consuelo.  
**e** ¿Cómo se llaman \_\_\_\_ padres?  
**f** \_\_\_\_ monopatín es negro y amarillo.  
**g** \_\_\_\_ pasatiempo favorito es el patinaje.  
**h** \_\_\_\_ colores favoritos son el rojo y el blanco.  
**i** \_\_\_\_ comida favorita es la paella.  
**j** \_\_\_\_ bebidas favoritas son la sangría y la leche.

### 2.6.4 Our (*nuestro/a, nuestros/as*)



**If you know all about *nuestro/a* and *vuestro/a*, go on to 2.6.6.**

The words for *our* are **nuestro/nuestra** and **nuestros/nuestras**. Unlike the other possessive adjectives you have met so far, they change for the singular and plural *and* the masculine and feminine: **nuestro apartamento, nuestra casa, nuestros coches, nuestras tiendas**.

#### I How would you say these are *our* things?

Es nuestro/a .... / Son nuestros/as ...

- a** \_\_\_\_ casa  
**b** \_\_\_\_ apartamento  
**c** \_\_\_\_ perros  
**d** \_\_\_\_ bodega  
**e** \_\_\_\_ vinos  
**f** \_\_\_\_ garaje  
**g** \_\_\_\_ coche  
**h** \_\_\_\_ jardín  
**i** \_\_\_\_ árbol  
**j** \_\_\_\_ dormitorios

## 2.6.5 Your (*vuestro/a, vuestros/as*)

The word for *your* (familiar plural form) is easy to remember because it rhymes with **nuestro/a** and **nuestros/as** and behaves in the same way: **vuestro hijo, vuestras hermanas**.

**I** Ask if these are *your* things.

¿Es vuestro/a .../¿Son vuestros/as ...

- a** \_\_\_\_ oficina?
- b** \_\_\_\_ silla?
- c** \_\_\_\_ ordenador?
- d** \_\_\_\_ libros?
- e** \_\_\_\_ abrigo?
- f** \_\_\_\_ guantes?
- g** \_\_\_\_ paraguas?
- h** \_\_\_\_ documentos?
- i** \_\_\_\_ cartera?
- j** \_\_\_\_ llaves?

## 2.6.6 Their (*su, sus*)

The words for *their* are **su** and **sus** – the same as the words for *his/her/its*. They rhyme with the words for *your* (**tu, tus**) and behave in the same way.

These words are also used to express *your* when you are using the formal **usted/ustedes** forms (see 2.6.7).

**I** Say these are *their* things.

Es su .../Son sus ...

- a** \_\_\_\_ coche
- b** \_\_\_\_ garaje
- c** \_\_\_\_ bicis
- d** \_\_\_\_ jardín
- e** \_\_\_\_ flores
- f** \_\_\_\_ plantas
- g** \_\_\_\_ casa
- h** \_\_\_\_ puerta
- i** \_\_\_\_ ventanas
- j** \_\_\_\_ balcón

## 2.6.7 Your (formal) (*su, sus*)

The words for *your* (formal **usted** and **ustedes** forms – for talking to strangers, people older than you, etc.) are the same in form as the words for *his/her/its* and *their* (**su/sus**), and work in the same way.

Deme su pasaporte, por favor.

Señora, ¿éstos son sus niños?

Caballeros, pueden aparcar su coche allí.

Señoras y señores, ¡no dejen sus maletas allí, por favor!

Give me your passport, please.

Madam, are these your children?

Gentlemen, you can park your car there.

Ladies and gentlemen, please don't leave your suitcases there!

**I** Ask if these are *your* things, using the formal form **su/sus**.

¿Es su ...?/¿Son sus ...?

- a** \_\_\_\_\_ gato
- b** \_\_\_\_\_ silla
- c** \_\_\_\_\_ libros
- d** \_\_\_\_\_ pies
- e** \_\_\_\_\_ jersey
- f** \_\_\_\_\_ tazas
- g** \_\_\_\_\_ hermanos
- h** \_\_\_\_\_ moto
- i** \_\_\_\_\_ cama
- j** \_\_\_\_\_ cartas

**II** Translate the following using the appropriate possessive adjectives.

(Use either *tu/tus* or *vuestro/a/os/as* for your.)

**My** friends are very competitive! Juan says **his** BMW is faster than **my** Alfa Romeo; not true! Enrique and Concha say **their** cars are more comfortable than **our** cars. What is **your** car like? **Our** village is a good place to live, but Concha says **her** parents live in a prettier village and **their** house is like a palace. Are **your** friends as competitive as **my** friends?

## 2.6.8 ► **Fast track:** nouns and determiners

All nouns in Spanish are either masculine or feminine.

- The word for *the* with masculine singular nouns is **el**.
- The word for *the* with feminine singular nouns is **la**.
- The word for *the* with masculine plural nouns is **los**.
- The word for *the* with feminine plural nouns is **las**.
- The word for *a* with masculine nouns is **un**.
- The word for *a* with feminine nouns is **una**.

When saying what people *are* or *do* (their jobs, nationalities, etc.) you usually omit the *a* in Spanish:

Soy estudiante.

I am (a) student.

A does not have a plural of its own. The plural of 'a' in English would be 'some' or 'any', but it is usually omitted in Spanish:

Busco libros. I am looking for (some) books.  
No busco libros. I am not looking for (any) books.

However, in Spanish, the plural forms **unos** and **unas** are sometimes used to indicate a number of items without being specific, rather like English *some*:

Necesito unos libros más modernos. I need some more modern books.  
Tiene unas flores magníficas. She has some magnificent flowers.

This plural form can also be used to indicate an approximate number, being equivalent to 'some' when it means 'about':

Mi abuelo tiene unos ochenta años. My grandfather is about 80 years old.  
Lo visité hace unas tres semanas. I visited him about three weeks ago.

It is a good idea to learn Spanish nouns with *the* (**el** and **la**): **la comida; el gato**.

How to translate *my, your, his, her, its, etc.*:

	with singular nouns	with plural nouns
my	mi	mis
your (familiar singular)	tu	tus
his/her/its	su	sus
their	su	sus
your (formal sing. and pl.)	su	sus

*Our* and *your* (familiar plural) change according to number and gender:

	with masc. sing. nouns	with fem. sing. nouns	with masc. pl. nouns	with fem. pl. nouns
our	nuestro	nuestra	nuestros	nuestras
your (familiar plural)	vuestro	vuestra	vuestros	vuestras

## 2.7 More determiners

Remember, determiners are words which come before a noun and say 'which' one it is. You already know some but there are others.

Ones you already know: **the table**, **a table**, **my table**, **your table**

Some new ones: **which table?**, **all tables**, **the same table**, **several tables**, **some tables**, **every table**.

If you do not think you need these yet, leave them and come back to them later.

el/la, los/las	the
un/una, unos/unas	a/some
mi, mis	my
este/esta, estos/estas	this/these
¿cuánto/cuánta?, ¿cuántos/cuántas?	how much/how many?
otro/otra, otros/otras	(an)other
mucho/mucha, muchos/muchas	much/many
poco/poca, pocos/pocas	little (of)/few
tanto/tanta, tantos/tantas	so much/many
demasiado/demasiada, demasiados/demasiadas	too much/too many
todo/toda, todos/todas	all/every
ambos/ambas	both
cierto/cierta, ciertos/ciertas	(a) certain
mismo/misma, mismos/mismas	same
varios/as	several
algún/alguno/alguna, algunos/algunas	some/any/a few
ningún/ninguno/ninguna	no/not any/none/nobody

### 2.7.1 This, these: *este/esta* and *estos/estas*

The demonstrative adjectives **este/esta**, etc. are used to point to a particular thing or things: *this page*, *this book*, *these clothes*.

singular		plural	
masculine	feminine	masculine	feminine
este	esta	estos	estas

**I** Put the correct form (**este/esta** or **estos/estas**) in front of these words.

- |   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| <b>a</b> ____ hotel es muy bueno.             | This hotel is very good.             |
| <b>b</b> Detrás de ____ casa, hay un jardín.  | Behind this house there is a garden. |
| <b>c</b> En ____ jardín crecen plantas.       | In this garden, they grow plants.    |
| <b>d</b> ____ personas trabajan en el jardín. | These people work in the garden.     |
| <b>e</b> ____ árboles son raros.              | These flowers are rare.              |

## 2.7.2 That, those: *ese/esa/esos/esas* and *aquel/aquella/aquellos/aquellas*

Spanish has two demonstrative adjectives which translate the English *that/those*. **Ese/esa**, etc. is used to point to something further away than *this* but still quite close to you: *that book, those clothes (just there)*, and **aquel/aquella**, etc. to point to something still further away: *that car, those houses (over there)*.

singular		plural	
masculine	feminine	masculine	feminine
ese	esa	esos	esas
aquel	aquella	aquellos	aquellas

**I** Put the correct form of **este/esta/estos/estas** in front of the nouns to complete these sentences.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>a</b> ____ árbol es muy viejo.                        | That tree is very old.                      |
| <b>b</b> ____ puerta está reservada para los visitantes. | That door is reserved for visitors.         |
| <b>c</b> ____ folletos son gratuitos.                    | Those brochures are free.                   |
| <b>d</b> ____ mujeres sacan fotos.                       | Those women are taking photos.              |
| <b>e</b> En ____ jardín hay muchos narcisos.             | In that garden there are lots of daffodils. |

**II** Now complete the sentences in exercise I, but this time using the correct form of **aquel/aquella/aquellos/aquellas**.

**III** Imagine that you are a very fussy customer: this item you are offered is not good enough, you prefer that ... . Try to make up about 10 sentences, using all the possible forms of *este, ese* and *aquel*. Here are some examples:

No me gusta este libro, prefiero ese libro, pero me encanta aquel libro.

Odio esta tableta gris, me gusta bastante esa tableta blanca, pero quiero aquella tableta azul.

Estos móviles son feos, esos móviles son demasiado caros, pero me molan aquellos móviles.



### 2.7.3 ¿Cuánto/Cuánta? and ¿Cuántos/Cuántas? ¿Cuánto/Cuánta? and ¿Cuántos/Cuántas? mean *how much* and *how many*, and agree in number and gender with the noun.

singular		plural	
masculine	feminine	masculine	feminine
¿cuánto?	¿cuánta?	¿cuántos?	¿cuántas?

#### I Put in the correct form: **cuánto/cuánta/cuántos/cuántas**.

- a** ¿\_\_\_ dinero tienes? How much money have you got?  
**b** ¿\_\_\_ manzanas quieres? How many apples do you want?  
**c** ¿\_\_\_ tiempo pasaron allí? How much time did they spend there?  
**d** ¿\_\_\_ coches están en la calle? How many cars are in the street?

### 2.7.4 Some, other, all, any, every, etc.

These adjectives agree in the normal way with the noun (but note that some, such as **ambos** and **ambas**, are (both) only used in the plural).

otro/otra, otros/otras ((an)other)

- Deme otro bolígrafo. Give me a different biro.  
 Tienes otra hija, ¿verdad? You have another daughter, haven't you?  
 Tengo otros hijos que no I have other sons who don't live viven aquí. here.  
 Necesitamos otras seis personas. We need six more/other people.

Note that 'another' is always translated by otro/otra, and this is never used with un/una. The rule is un/una and otro/a – *never together!*

mucho/mucha, muchos/muchas (*much, many*)

- Tiene mucho trabajo. He/She has a lot of work.  
 Tienen mucha basura. They have a lot of rubbish.  
 ¿Tienes muchos amigos? Have you got lots of friends?  
 Mi amiga sacó muchas fotos. My friend took lots of photos.

poco/poca, pocos/pocas (*little, few*)

- Tenemos muy poco tiempo. We have very little time.  
 Mi madre tiene poca paciencia. My mother has little patience.  
 Mi hermano tiene pocos amigos. My brother has few friends.  
 Habla con pocas palabras. He speaks with few words.

Note that when by itself, *poco/poca/pocos/pocas* implies a 'negative' quantity, using *poco* with *un* converts it into

a 'positive' quantity; it is the same in the plural. For example:

tengo un poco de pan  
tenemos unos pocos pasteles  
llevan unas pocas galletas

I have a bit of bread;  
we have (just) a few cakes;  
they have a few biscuits.

tanto/tanta, tantos/tantas (*so much, so many*)

¡No me des tanto!  
¡Hay tanta gente!  
No tenemos tantos coches  
como ellos.  
Su amiga tiene tantas tías.

Don't give me so much!  
There are so many people!  
We haven't as many cars as they  
have.  
Her friend has so many aunts.

demasiado/a, demasiados/as (*too much, too many*)

Tengo demasiado trabajo.  
¡Había demasiada gente!  
Los vecinos tienen demasiados  
coches.  
Saqué demasiadas fotos.

I have too much work.  
There were too many people!  
The neighbours have too many  
cars.  
I took too many photos.

todo/toda, todos/todas (*all, every*)

todo el tiempo  
toda la familia  
todos los otros  
todas las otras  
todas las flores  
todos los días  
todas las semanas

all the time  
all the family  
all the others (masculine)  
all the others (feminine)  
all the flowers/every flower  
every day  
every week

ambos/ambas (*both*)

Ambos tienen un coche rojo.  
Le di ambas partes del  
documento.

They both have a red car.  
I gave him both parts of the  
document.

cierto/cierta, ciertos/ciertas (*a*) *certain*)

Cierto chico salió con ella.  
Me dio cierta noticia ...

A certain boy went out with her.  
She gave me a certain piece of  
news ...

Ciertos coches son más rápidos.  
Para ciertas personas no tiene  
importancia.

Certain cars are faster.  
For certain people it's not  
important.

mismo/misma, mismos/mismas (*same*)

Es del mismo color.  
Tenemos la misma amiga.  
Vamos a los mismos sitios.  
Les gustan las mismas cosas.

It is the same colour.  
We have the same girlfriend.  
We go to the same places.  
They like the same things.

varios/varias

**Varios/as** means *several*. Obviously, it is always plural, but it agrees in gender with the noun it refers to.

Tuve que escuchar varios discos compactos.	I had to listen to several CDs.
¡Ya te lo conté varias veces!	I have already told you several times!

algún/alguno/alguna, algunos/algunas  
(*some/any/a few*)

**Algún** means *some, any*, etc. The form **algún** is used before masculine nouns, while **alguno** is used by itself, as a pronoun; **alguna** is used both before feminine nouns and by itself as a pronoun.

¿Tienes algún tiempo libre?	Have you got any free time?
Tengo algunos minutos.	I've got a few minutes.
Tengo algunos, pero no muchos.	I've got a few but not many.

ningún/ninguno/ninguna (*no/not any/none/nobody*)

**Ningún** is a negative word meaning *no, no one*, etc. It is used together with **no** (*not*), which reinforces it rather than cancelling it out as it would in English. The form **ningún** is used before masculine nouns, while **ninguno** is used by itself, as a pronoun; **ninguna** is used both before feminine nouns and by itself as a pronoun.

¿No tienes ningún amigo?	Haven't you got any friends?
No, no tengo ninguno.	No, I have none.
¡No hay ninguna botella de agua aquí!	There is no bottle of water here!

- I Translate this into Spanish, using the adjectives from 2.7.4 as necessary. Remember to make sure you use the correct form for the gender and number of the noun each one describes.

Some men drink tea, other men prefer coffee several times each day. Many women like white wine and some red wine, but few women prefer beer. Too many young people drink too much every weekend, both young men and young women. Not all people do this, and many prefer to eat at a restaurant. Certain people go to the same place to eat every time they go out to dinner. Why? No idea!

# 3

# PRONOUNS

## What is a pronoun?

A pronoun is a word which stands for a noun. Instead of saying:

- *Mr Jones*, you can say *he*: **él**
- *the woman*, you can say *she*: **ella**
- *my husband/wife and I*, you can say *we*: **nosotros/nosotras** (use **nosotros** for masculine nouns and a mixture of genders, and use **nosotras** for feminine nouns)
- *Señor y Señora Gómez*, you can say *they*: **ellos/ellas** (use **ellos** for masculine nouns and a mixture of genders, and use **ellas** for feminine nouns)

In English, instead of saying *table* we say *it*. In Spanish, everything is either masculine or feminine, so *the table* is *she* (**ella**) and *the book* is *he* (**él**).

But don't forget that in a Spanish sentence the subject pronouns are almost always left out, because the ending on the verb does their job and tells you who or what is the subject of the verb.

## 3.1

*yo, tú, usted, él, ella*, etc.: subject pronouns



**If you know what a subject pronoun is, go on to 3.2.**

The subject is the person who or the thing which does the action: *I run, you play, he eats, she drinks, it shuts, we live, you swim, they talk*.

The subject pronouns in Spanish are as follows.

singular	plural
yo	nosotros/as
tú	vosotros/as
él	ellos
ella	ellas
usted	ustedes

### 3.1.1 Yo – I: the first person singular

You use the first person when you are talking about yourself. It translates *I*.

yo soy	I am
yo duermo	I am sleeping
yo bebo	I am drinking
yo escucho	I am listening
yo me llamo Peter y vivo ...	I am called Peter and I live ...

**Yo** is only written with a capital letter at the beginning of a sentence.

With **yo** the verb almost always ends in **-o** in the present tense; just four verbs have **yo** endings in **-oy**.

### 3.1.2 Tú – you: the familiar singular form

You use **tú** when you are talking to one person you know very well, to someone who has invited you to do so, or to a child or pet. It translates *you*.

¿Tú tienes un perro?	Have you got a dog?
¿Has ido a Madrid?	Did you go to Madrid?

With **tú** the verb always ends in **-as**, **-ás** or **-es** in the present tense.

### 3.1.3 Él/ella – he/she/it: the third person singular

You use **él/ella** when you are talking about someone or something else. These words translate *he, she* and *it*.

Remember that in Spanish everything is either masculine or feminine. A *chair* is feminine, so if you want to say something about *it*, you have to use **ella** (*she*); similarly, a *book* is masculine so if you want to refer to *it*, you have to say **él** (*he*).

La vio ella.	She saw it.
Me vio él.	He saw me.

With **él/ella** the verb ends in **-a**, **-á** or **-e** in the present tense, except for *he/she/it is* – **es**.

### 3.1.4 Usted – you: the formal singular form

You use **usted** when you are talking to one person you don't know very well, your boss at work, your teacher, someone who is older than you, etc. It translates *you*.

Note that you use the third person of the verb with **usted**, so the verb ends in **-a**, **-á** or **-e** in the present tense, except for *you are* – **usted es**.

¿Usted es profesor?

Are you a teacher?

¿Es usted española?

Are you Spanish?

Usted habla español, ¿no?

You do speak Spanish, don't you?

Usted tiene una casa bonita.

You have a pretty house.

### 3.1.5 *Nosotros/as* – we: the first person plural

You use **nosotros** to talk about yourself and one or more other people, when the people are all male or a mixture of males and females. Use **nosotras** when you are talking about yourself and one or more other people, all of whom are female. You use these words when you would use *we* in English.

After **nosotros/as** the verb always ends in **-amos**, **-emos** or **-imos** in the present tense, except for *we are* – **somos**.

Nosotros (Juan, María y yo)  
vamos al parque.

We are going to the park.

Nosotras (Paquita y yo – Josefa)  
fuimos a la playa.

We went to the beach.

### 3.1.6 *Vosotros/as* – you: the familiar plural form

You use **vosotros** when you are talking to two or more male people you know well, or who are younger than you, related to you, etc. You also use it for a mixture of male and female people you know or who are younger than you. Use **vosotras** for two or more female people you know well or who are younger than you. These words translate *you*.

With **vosotros/as** the verb always ends in **-áis**, **-éis** or **-ís** in the present tense, except for *you are* – **sois**.

Vosotros dos (Juan y Miguel),  
¿qué pensáis?

What do you two think?

Vosotras (Marta y María), ¿estáis  
conmigo o no?

Are you two with me or not?

### 3.1.7 *Ellos/ellas* – they: the third person plural

You use **ellos/ellas** when you are talking about more than one person or thing. These words translate *they*.

You use **ellos** to refer to:

- more than one masculine person or thing;
- a mixture of masculine and feminine people or things.

You only use **ellas** if all the people or things are feminine.

After **ellos/ellas** the verb ends in **-an**, **-án** or **-en** in the present tense, except for *they are* – **son**.

Ellos viven al final de la calle.

They live at the end of the street.

Ellas (Virginia e Isabel) trabajan  
en Madrid.

They work in Madrid.

### 3.1.8 *Ustedes* – you: the formal plural form

You use **ustedes** when you are talking to two or more people of either gender whom you don't know, who are older than you, etc. It also translates *you*.

Note that you use the third person of the verb with **ustedes**, so the verb ends in **-an**, **-án** or **-en** in the present tense, except for *you are* – **son**.

Pasen ustedes por aquí, y siéntense.

Come this way and sit down.

#### I Which subject pronoun should you use?

- a I am going to the cinema tonight.
- b After the cinema we are going to a restaurant.
- c My girlfriends will be there.
- d The boys are going to a football match.
- e Lucas is playing.
- f Isabel is going to watch.
- g Where are you going?

#### II Add the correct subject pronoun to these sentences.

- a Juan vive en España. \_\_\_\_ vive en el norte.
- b Pablo y Mariana viven en el sur. \_\_\_\_ viven en Málaga.
- c ¿Yo? \_\_\_\_ vivo en Madrid.
- d ¿Dónde vive \_\_\_\_, señor?
- e Yo vivo en el centro de Madrid con mis amigos. \_\_\_\_ vivimos en un piso en la calle de Alcalá.
- f Mari-Carmen y Sofía viven en el barrio norte. \_\_\_\_ tienen un pequeño apartamento.
- g Mi hermana vive en León. \_\_\_\_ estudia en la universidad de León.
- h Mis abuelos viven en la Alcarria. \_\_\_\_ tienen una granja.
- i ¿Dónde vives \_\_\_\_ ?
- j Mi hermano juega al tenis. \_\_\_\_ juega muy bien.

### 3.1.9 ► **Fast track:** subject pronouns

A pronoun is a word which stands for a noun: **I run, you play, he eats, she drinks, it shuts, we live, you swim, they talk.**

The subject is the person who or thing which does the action.

Subject pronouns are normally omitted in Spanish, but when you do use them (usually for emphasis or clarification), they are as follows:

You use **yo** (first person singular) when you are talking about yourself. After **yo** the verb usually ends in **-o** in the present tense.

You use **tú** (*you*, familiar singular form) when you are talking to one person you know very well, to someone who has invited you to do so, or to a child or pet. After **tú** the verb ends in **-as**, **-ás** or **-es** in the present tense.

You use **usted** (*you*, formal singular form) when you are talking to one person you don't know very well, someone who is older than you, etc. After **usted** the verb is in the third person form and ends in **-a**, **-á** or **-e** in the present tense.

You use **él/ella** (third person singular) to translate *he*, *she* and *it*. In Spanish, everything is either masculine or feminine, so *the table* (**la mesa**) is *she* (**ella**) and *the book* (**el libro**) is *he* (**él**). After **él/ella** the verb usually ends in **-a**, **-á** or **-e** in the present tense.

You use **nosotros/as** (first person plural) to talk about yourself and someone else (**nosotros** for two or more males or a mixture of males and females, and **nosotras** for an all female group). You use it when you would use *we* in English. After **nosotros/as** the verb ends in **-amos**, **-emos** or **-imos** in the present tense.

You use **vosotros/as** (familiar plural form) to translate *you* when talking to people you know quite well (**vosotros** for two or more males or a mixture of males and females, and **vosotras** for all females). After **vosotros/as** the verb usually ends in **-áis**, **-éis** or **-ís** in the present tense.

You use **ustedes** (*you*, formal plural form) when you are talking to two or more people of either gender whom you don't know, who are older than you, etc. After **ustedes** the verb is in the third person form and usually ends in **-an**, **-án** or **-en** in the present tense.

You use **ellos/ellas** (third person plural) to translate *they*. Use **ellos** to refer to more than one masculine person or thing, or to a mixture of masculine and feminine people or things. Only use **ellas** if all the people or things are feminine. After **ellos/ellas** the verb usually ends in **-an**, **-án** or **-en** in the present tense.



## 3.2 *Lo, la, los, las* – him, her, it, them: direct object pronouns



**If you know what a direct object pronoun is and how to use it, go on to 3.3.**

*Him, her* and *it* are called object pronouns. They stand for the person who or object which has the action done to it.

I saw John/*him*.

John saw Karen/*her*.

I bought the watch/*it*.

I like Paul/*him*.

He likes Isabelle/*her*.

She doesn't like the boys/*them*.

**I** Which is the direct object?

**a** I bought a new car.

**b** My husband drove it home for me.

**c** A dog chased a cat across the road.

**d** He swerved and hit a tree.

**e** He broke the door mirror.

**f** He bought me a bunch of flowers.

**g** He took the car to the garage to be repaired.

### 3.2.1 *Lo, la, los, las* – him, her, it, them, you

The words for *him, her, it, them, you* (formal form) in Spanish are as follows:

	singular		plural	
	masc	fem	masc	fem
you (formal)	lo (le)	la	los (les)	las
him, her, them	lo (le)	la	los (les)	las
it, them	lo	la	los	las

The words for *him/her/it* and *them* in Spanish are **lo/los** (masculine) and **la/las** (feminine), and these words are also used to refer to *you* (formal: **usted** in the singular and **ustedes** in the plural). In some parts of Spain **le** and **les** are used instead of **lo** and **los** for *people only*. **La** is *always* used for female people and feminine nouns.

In Spanish, the **lo, la, le, los, las** and **les** usually come in front of the verb. However, when there is more than one verb together (for instance, a participle or an infinitive along with the verb), they can be tacked onto the end of the infinitive or participle. They also have to be tacked onto the end of a positive command. This sometimes means that the verb needs an accent to keep the stress in the right place.

Ya lo veo.	I can see him/it (lit: him/it I see).
No los veo.	I don't see them (lit: not them I see).
Le llamaré esta tarde.	I'll call you this afternoon.
Queremos comerlas/Las queremos comer.	We want to eat them.
Están comprándola/La están comprando.	They are buying it.
No podemos llamarlas en seguida.	We can't call them immediately.
¡Bébelo!	Drink it!
¡No lo olvides!	Don't you forget it!

**I** Señora Ramos buys a new skirt (**la falda**). Marcos bought some socks (**los calcetines**). What is the pronoun?

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>a</b> Señora Ramos sees two nice skirts.          | _____ ve.  |
| <b>b</b> She buys one.                               | _____ compra.                                      |
| <b>c</b> She takes it home.                          | _____ lleva a casa.                                |
| <b>d</b> She wears it this evening.                  | _____ lleva puesta esta tarde.                     |
| <b>e</b> Señor Ramos finds it old-fashioned.         | El señor Ramos _____ encuentra pasada de moda.     |
| <b>f</b> She takes it back to the shop.              | _____ devuelve a la tienda.                        |
| <b>g</b> Marcos saw some nice socks and bought them. | Marcos vio unos calcetines bonitos y _____ compró. |
| <b>h</b> He put them in his bag.                     | _____ puso en su bolsa.                            |
| <b>i</b> On the way home, he left it on the bus.     | Camino de casa _____ dejó olvidada en el autobús.  |

### 3.2.2 Me, te, nos, os – me, you, us

	singular	plural
me, us	me	nos
you (familiar)	te	os

These pronouns are used in the same way as **lo, la**, etc. (see 3.2.1), so they also usually come in front of the verb.

No me olvidés.

Ya te veo.

Nunca nos llaman.

Os visitaré pasado mañana.

No quiere verme.

Don't forget me.

I can see you now.

They never call us.

I'll visit you the day after

tomorrow.

She doesn't want to see me.

**I** Answer these questions, changing **me** to **te**, **nos** to **os** and vice versa as necessary.

**a** Oye, ¿me quieres? Sí \_\_\_\_ quiero.

**b** ¿Puedo besarte? No, no \_\_\_\_ puedes besar.

**c** ¿Vais a llamarnos? Sí, \_\_\_\_ llamaremos mañana.

**d** ¿Podemos visitaros mañana? Si, podéis visitar \_\_\_\_ mañana.

### 3.2.3 ► Fast track: direct object pronouns

*Lo, la, le, los, las, les* – him, her, it, them, you

In English *him, her, you, it*, etc. almost always come straight after the verb.

In Spanish, **lo, la, le, los, las, les**, etc. normally come in front of the verb.

Lo/Le vi en la calle.

Las quiero mucho.

Los/Les veré mañana.

I saw him in the street.

I love them lots.

I'll see you tomorrow.

**Le** and **les** are used for people by some Spanish speakers rather than *lo* and *los*.

*Me, te, nos, os* – me, you, us

¿Me viste llegar?

¡Te odio!

Nos enfadaste al hacer esto.

Os dejamos y nos vamos a casa.

Did you see me arrive?

I hate you!

You annoyed us when you did that.

We are leaving you and going home.

**I** Answer these questions using **me**, **te**, **nos** and **os** as appropriate.

**a** ¿Quieres que te llame esta tarde? Sí, lláma \_\_\_\_.

**b** ¿Queréis visitarnos el domingo? No, no \_\_\_\_ visitaremos.

**c** ¿Me presentas a tu novia? Sí, \_\_\_\_ la presento.

**d** Os veré mañana, ¿vale? Sí, ven a ver \_\_\_\_ mañana.

### 3.3 Me, te, le, nos, os, les: indirect object pronouns



**If you know what an indirect object pronoun is and how to use it, go on to 3.4.**

In English, an indirect object pronoun is the same as a direct object pronoun but has (or can have) *to* or *for* in front of it.

- *I bought her it. I bought it* (direct object – it is the thing that you bought) *for her* (indirect object).
- *Give me it. Give it* (direct object – the thing which is being given) *to me* (indirect object).
- *They showed him it. They showed it* (direct object – the thing which is being shown) *to him* (indirect object).

The indirect object pronouns in Spanish are as follows:

singular	plural
me – (to) me	nos – (to) us
te – (to) you	os – (to) you
le – (to) him/her/you (formal)	les – (to) them/you (formal)



Indirect pronouns are used with verbs such as *give, send, write, show, buy, offer, tell, lend*, where you do something *to/for* someone/something, and with some surprising verbs where English uses 'from...'. For example, *me robó el reloj* – he stole the watch from me.

**I** Identify the indirect object pronouns in these English sentences.



Try saying *to/for* in front of the pronoun to see if it is indirect.

- Pascual sent me a text message.
- I could not read it. My friend can. I showed it to her.
- She translated it for me.
- I wrote him a reply.
- She sent it for me.
- He sent her a new message.
- She did not show me it.

- h** She sent him a photo of herself.  
**i** He sent her another message.  
**j** She sent him a reply.  
**k** He texted her.  
**l** She did not tell me what he said.  
**m** She gave me my phone back and went.

### 3.3.1 Word order: indirect object pronouns

In Spanish, the indirect object pronoun usually comes in front of the verb.

**Exceptions:** it can be placed on the end of an infinitive or a participle, and it must be tacked onto the end of a positive command.

¿Me pasas esa manzana?

Will you pass (to) me that apple?

Te mandaré diez euros.  
 Le devolverán su coche pronto.

I'll send (to) you ten euros.  
 They'll soon return her car to her.

Le digo que no puede entrar.  
 Por favor, mándenos un mensaje.

I tell (to) you, you can't go in.  
 Please send (to) us a message.

¡Os digo que no podéis jugar al fútbol aquí!

I tell you, you can't play football here!

Voy a ofrecerles un premio.

I am going to offer you a prize.

Salió sin decirles adiós.

He went out without saying goodbye to them.



**Me, te, nos** and **os** are the same as the direct object pronouns, so you only have to remember **le** – to you (formal singular form), to him/her and **les** – to you (formal plural form), to them.

#### I Finish off this conversation, adding the appropriate indirect object pronoun as indicated.

Padre: Hijo, no (to you) hablamos con frecuencia. Ven aquí: tienes que prestar (to me) atención. ¿Por qué no (to us) escribiste para explicar? Vamos a dar (to you) un consejo. Deberías mandar (to her) unas flores. Cuando vayas a casa de sus padres, deberías ofrecer (to them) una botella de vino.

Hijo: Mamá y papá, (to you) he escuchado. Pero basta ya: no quiero hablar (to her) más.

### 3.3.2 Word order: direct and indirect object pronouns



**If you don't need to know about this yet, go on to 3.3.3.**

If there is more than one object pronoun together in a sentence, the indirect object pronoun comes before the direct object pronoun. Remember that **me, te, nos** and **os** can be either direct or indirect object pronouns.

The only slight complication is that, if the indirect object pronouns **le** and **les** are followed by a third person object pronoun, the indirect object pronoun (which will usually be a person) changes to **se**. This is purely to avoid two pronouns beginning with **l-** coming together.

		<b>Indirect object</b>	<b>Direct object</b>	
yo		me	me	
tú		te	te	
él		le*	lo/le	
ella		le*	la	
usted		le*	le/lo/la	
nosotros/as	(no)	nos	nos	(verb)
vosotros/as		os	os	
ellos		les*	les/los/las	
ellas		les*	les/los/las	
ustedes		les*	les/los/las	

\* If these are followed by **lo/le/la** or **les/los/las**, they change to **se**.

Note that these rules apply whether the pronouns are in front of the verb or tacked onto the end of an infinitive, a participle or a positive command.



Choose a sentence to memorise to help you remember the sound of the phrases.

Me lo dio ayer.  
Te los mandaré mañana.

Se las devuelvo en seguida.

Quiero devolvérselas en seguida.

¡Dámelos en seguida!

She gave it to me yesterday.  
I'll send them to you  
tomorrow.

I'll give them back to you  
straight away.

I want to give them back to  
you straight away.

Give them to me immediately!

## I How would you say the following?

- |                                     |                                   |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| a My friend gave them to me.        | Mi amigo ____ dio.                |
| b Please send it to them.           | Por favor, mánde ____.            |
| c When did she tell it to them?     | ¿Cuándo ____ contó?               |
| d I can't give them to you.         | No puedo dar ____.                |
| e Ladies, I can tell it to you now. | Señoras, puedo contar ____ ahora. |



**If you have had enough of pronouns, move on to Chapter 4 on Adjectives and come back later.**

### 3.3.3 ► **Fast track:** indirect object pronouns

In English, an indirect object pronoun is similar to a direct object pronoun but has (or can have) *to* or *for* in front of it.

Indirect object pronouns are used with verbs such as *give, send, write, show, buy, offer, tell, lend*, where you do something *to/for* someone.



The indirect object pronouns are very similar to the direct object pronouns!

me	to me
te	to you (familiar singular)
le	to him/her/it
le	to you (formal singular)
nos	to us
os	to you
les	to them
les	to you (formal plural)

In Spanish, indirect object pronouns go in the same place as direct object pronouns. To sum up, this is:

- usually immediately in front of the verb
- optionally on the end of an infinitive or present participle
- compulsorily on the end of a positive command.

If you have more than one pronoun, either in front of the verb or on the end of it, the indirect object pronoun always comes before the direct object pronoun.

Se lo di.	I gave it to her.
Nos la dieron en la escuela.	They gave it to us at school.

Te la doy en seguida.

Me lo mandarás, ¿no?

¿Por qué no se las devuelves?

Tienen ustedes que devolvérmelo.

¡Dámelo ahora!

I will give it to you immediately.

You will send it to me, won't you?

Why don't you give them back to them?

You have to give it back to me.

Give it to me now!

### I Complete the sentences with the necessary pronouns.

**a** Su madre \_\_\_\_ regaló. (it to me)

**b** Hágame el favor de quitár \_\_\_\_ . (it off you)

**c** ¿Cuándo \_\_\_\_ envió? (them to us)

**d** No puedo explicár \_\_\_\_ . (it to her)

**e** Señores, aquí tienen sus chalecos salvavidas: póngan \_\_\_\_ ahora. (them on you)



You can easily avoid having to use more than one pronoun by repeating one of the nouns!

## 3.4 *Mí, ti*, etc.: prepositional/disjunctive pronouns

Prepositional or disjunctive pronouns are used after prepositions (see 6.1), but only when talking about people or animals. Most of them are the same as the subject pronouns. The exceptions are: **mí**, **tí** and **sí**. NB. the accents on *mí* and *sí* are to distinguish them from words with the same spelling but other meanings.

con él – with him, sin ella – without her, para ellos – for them, cerca de nosotros – around us, delante de ellas – in front of them.

Este libro es para ti.

Quiero ir a Madrid con ellas.

¿Es para usted?

Está con ella.

Compramos un regalo para él.

¿Vamos con ustedes?

This book is for you.

I want to go to Madrid with them.

Is it for you?

He's with her.

We're buying a present for him.

Are we going with you?

There are three special forms: **conmigo** and **contigo**, which are used in the singular for *with me* and *with you* (familiar form), and **consigo**, which is only used for true reflexive situations.



mí	me
ti	you (familiar singular)
él	him/it
ella	her/it
sí	...self (only used for a true reflexive situation)
usted	you (formal singular)
nosotros/as	us
vosotros/as	you (familiar plural)
ellos/ellas	them
sí	...selves (only used for a true reflexive situation)
ustedes	you (formal plural)

**I** Replace the people in italics or complete the sentence with a pronoun after the preposition.

- a** Tengo que hablar con *mi amigo*.  
**b** Me gusta estar al lado de *mi querida Carmen*.  
**c** Vamos a la playa con *nuestras amigas*.  
**d** Lo siento, este billete no pone su nombre: no es para *Ramón Ramos*.  
**e** Miguel, este libro es para \_\_\_\_\_.  
**f** Rosi y Marta, esta invitación es para \_\_\_\_\_.  
**g** Señoritas, la estación está detrás de \_\_\_\_\_.  
**h** Mis padres me regalaron este coche a \_\_\_\_\_.  
**i** ¡Qué suerte! querido, hemos ganado la lotería: este premio es para \_\_\_\_\_.

## 3.5 Object pronouns and the imperative



**If you are not going to be telling people what to do, leave this out and go on to 3.6.**

You probably already know the parts of this that you are likely to need. Check that it looks familiar and then move on.

When used with a verb in the positive imperative form, the object pronoun has to be added to the end of the verb, which may need an accent on the stressed syllable to keep the stress in the right place.

Cómelo todo.  
 Levántelas.  
 Mírame.

Eat it all.  
 Lift them up.  
 Look at me.

Tómelo.  
Escogedla.  
¡Dígame!

Hold it.  
Choose it.  
Tell me.

singular	plural
¡mírame!	¡míranos!
¡mírale!	¡mírales!
¡míralo!	¡míralos!
¡mírala!	¡míralas!

### I How would you say: look at ...?

Míra ...

- a** us
- b** him
- c** them (feminine)
- d** it (feminine)
- e** me

## 3.5.1 Pronouns with reflexive verbs in the imperative

lávate	wash yourself (familiar singular)
lávese	wash yourself (formal singular)
lavaos	wash yourselves (familiar plural)
lávense	wash yourselves (formal plural)

### I Tell the people in brackets to have a wash!

- a** (2 friends) lav\_\_\_
- b** (1 stranger) láv\_\_\_
- c** (1 friend) láv\_\_\_

## 3.5.2 Order of pronouns in the imperative

If there is more than one object pronoun added to the end of the imperative, the indirect object pronoun always comes before the direct object pronoun.

Dámelo.  
Cómpramelas.  
Devuélvanoslo.

Give it to me.  
Buy them for me.  
Give it back to us.

## 3.6 ¿Quién? ¿Qué?: interrogative words

An interrogative word is used to ask questions such as *who, why, how, which?* Most are either pronouns or adverbs. Here are some common ones, with their meanings.



**If you know all about interrogatives, go on to 3.7.**

**¿Quién/Quiénes?** – *who(m)*: this word means *who* if it refers to the subject of the sentence and *whom* if it refers to the object.



Remember, the subject is the person who or thing which 'does' the action.

¿Quién es esta mujer?	Who is this woman?
¿Con quién estás?	Who(m) are you with?
¿Quiénes son estas personas?	Who are these people?

**¿De quiénes?** – *whose*: this expression means *whose* when it is used to ask a question. (NB: the word **cuyo/a/os/as** is used for *whose* as a relative pronoun; see 3.8.4.)

¿De quién es este coche?	Whose car is this?
¿De quién es el hermano?	Whose brother is he?
¿De quiénes son estos abrigos?	Whose are these coats?

**¿Qué?** – *what, which*: **qué** usually means *what*, but it can mean *which* if used with a noun.

¿Qué es?	What is it?
¿Qué vas a comer?	What are you going to eat?
¿Qué coche es el mejor?	Which car is the best?

**¿Cuál/Cuáles?** – *which*: this word is used if there is a choice between two or more things. **Cuál** is the singular and **cuáles** is the plural.

Hay dos libros. ¿Cuál prefieres?	There are two books. Which do you prefer?
Tiene tres hermanas. ¿Cuáles están aquí?	He has three sisters. Which ones are here?

**¿Cuánto/a? ¿Cuántos/as?** – *how much, how many*: used as an adjective or a pronoun, this agrees with the noun(s) it refers to. It is sometimes used as an adverb, in which case it doesn't change.

As an adjective or a pronoun:

¿Cuánto dinero tienes?

How much money have you got?

¿Cuánta cerveza quieres?

How much beer do you want?

¿Cuántos hermanos tienes?

How many brothers have you got?

¿Cuántas casas hay en la ciudad?

How many houses are there in the city? How many are there in your street?

¿Cuántas hay en tu calle?

As an adverb meaning *how much*:

¿Cuánto vale?

How much is it?

**I Complete these questions with the appropriate form of ¿cuánto?**

**a** ¿\_\_\_ amigas vienen a tu fiesta?

**b** ¿\_\_\_ carne hay en la nevera?

**c** Necesito unos huevos. ¿\_\_\_ necesitas?

**d** Vamos a beber vino. ¿\_\_\_ tenemos?

**e** ¿\_\_\_ tortillas vas a preparar?

## 3.7

*Mío, tuyo, etc.:* possessive pronouns



**If you want to avoid using the possessive pronouns for the moment, you can say 'de Miguel', etc. (see section 3.4). Go on to 3.8.**

mine	(el) mío	(la) mía	(los) míos	(las) mías
yours (familiar sing.)	(el) tuyo	(la) tuya	(los) tuyos	(las) tuyas
his/hers/its	(el) suyo	(la) suya	(los) suyos	(las) suyas
yours (formal sing.)	(el) suyo	(la) suya	(los) suyos	(las) suyas
ours	(el) nuestro	(la) nuestra	(los) nuestros	(las) nuestras
yours (familiar pl.)	(el) vuestro	(la) vuestra	(los) vuestros	(las) vuestras
theirs (masc. and fem.)	(el) suyo	(la) suya	(los) suyos	(las) suyas
yours (formal pl.)	(el) suyo	(la) suya	(los) suyos	(las) suyas

Possessive pronouns translate the English *mine, yours, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs*. They have to agree with the noun they are replacing, and are used with the definite article except after the verb **ser** – *to be*: **es mío** – *it's mine*.

**I** Replace the nouns in *italics* with the correct form of the pronoun: **(el) mío, (la) mía, (los) míos, (las) mías.**

- a Aquí tienes *tu cartera*, pero, ¿dónde está \_\_\_\_?
- b No quiero *tus discos*, quiero escuchar \_\_\_\_
- c ¿Por qué sales con *mi paraguas*? Coge el tuyo y dame \_\_\_\_
- d Me gustan *estas gafas*, pero prefiero \_\_\_\_
- e Acabo de encontrar *unas fotos*. Parece que son \_\_\_\_
- f Ésta es *mi carta*. Es \_\_\_\_
- g Éstos son *mis periódicos*. Son \_\_\_\_
- h Voy a prestarte *este abrigo*. Es \_\_\_\_

**II** Replace the nouns in *italics* with the correct form of the pronoun: **el suyo, la suya, los suyos, las suyas** (NB: a couple here are for **usted(es)**).

- a ¿Son *las gafas* de Juan? Sí, acaba de comprar \_\_\_\_
- b Dime cuál es *el hijo* de doña Juana. Creo que \_\_\_\_ no está aquí.
- c Nosotros compraremos *nuestros billetes*, y ustedes comprarán \_\_\_\_, ¿verdad?
- d ¿Sabes dónde está *la casa* de los señores Rodríguez? Sí, \_\_\_\_ está al final de la calle.
- e Don José, ¿*este coche* es de usted, es \_\_\_\_?
- f ¿*Esta niña* es de María? No, no es \_\_\_\_
- g Severiano no quiere ponerse *estos pantalones*, porque no son \_\_\_\_
- h Tuve que pedir prestadas *unas tazas* a la vecina, pues éstas son \_\_\_\_

**III** Replace the nouns in *italics* with the correct form of the pronoun: **el vuestro, la vuestra, los vuestros, las vuestras.**

- a Juancho y Paqui, quiero ver *los periódicos*; ¿puedo leer \_\_\_\_?
- b No nos gusta nada *nuestro padre*, preferimos \_\_\_\_
- c ¿Dónde está *vuestra casa*? ¿Es ésta \_\_\_\_?
- d Acabo de encontrar *unas revistas*: ¿habéis perdido \_\_\_\_?
- e *Estos billetes* son de vosotros, ¿no? Son \_\_\_\_
- f ¿Cuál de *estas televisiones* es \_\_\_\_?
- g Merche y Anita, *estas manzanas* son \_\_\_\_ ¿verdad?
- h Niños, encontré *un balón*. ¿Es \_\_\_\_?

## 3.8

### *Que, quien, etc.:* relative pronouns



**If you can recognise a relative pronoun, go on to 3.8.1.**

Relative pronouns are the words *who, which* and *whose* when they are used to refer to someone or something already mentioned. Some of them look like the question words,

but they do not have accents. They also serve a different purpose – they link sentences, but they do not ask questions.

**Quien** is only used after prepositions, and only for people.

La mujer <i>que</i> vive en Madrid	The woman <i>who</i> lives in Madrid
El perro <i>que</i> ladra todos los días	The dog <i>which/that</i> barks every day
Mi ordenador <i>que</i> no funciona	My computer <i>which/that</i> doesn't work
El hombre con <i>quien</i> he venido	The man with <i>whom</i> I came ('the man I came with')
El coche, en <i>el cual</i> he salido	The car in <i>which</i> I left ('which I left in')
El hombre <i>cuyo</i> coche está siempre aparcado delante de nuestra casa	The man <i>whose</i> car is always parked in front of our house

The part of the sentence that contains the relative pronoun is called a relative clause, one of various types of subordinate clause.



A 'subordinate clause' is a name for part of a sentence which doesn't make sense on its own but depends on the rest of the sentence to complete its meaning.

### 3.8.1 *Que* – who, which, that

You can use **que** for *who*, *whom*, *which* or *that* in most situations, to refer to people or things. You can't use it if you are talking about a person and there is a preposition before the pronoun – e.g. *to whom* (or *who ... to*), *for whom* (or *who ... for*).

El hombre <i>que</i> vi ayer	The man ( <i>who(m)</i> ) I saw yesterday
La botella <i>que</i> rompió	The bottle ( <i>that</i> ) he broke

### 3.8.2 *Quien(es)* – (with, for, etc.) whom

You use **quien** when you are talking about a person and there is a preposition before the pronoun – e.g. *to whom* (or *who ... to*), *for whom* (or *who ... for*). **Quien** is used after the so-called *personal a*, which is needed with names of people or any word which defines them.

El amigo para <i>quien</i> he traído este regalo	The friend for whom I have brought this present ('The friend I have brought this present for')
--	--

Las mujeres con *quienes* he  
llegado

Ésta es la chica *a quien* conocí  
en la discoteca

No sé *a quienes* te refieres, pero  
no son esos hombres.

The women with whom I arrived  
(‘The women I arrived with’)

This is the girl I met at the disco

I don’t know who you are  
referring to, but it is not those  
men.

### 3.8.3 *El cual, etc.* – who/whom/which

You can use **el cual/la cual/los cuales/las cuales** when you are talking about a person or a thing, and you can also use it when there is a preposition before the pronoun – e.g. *to whom* (or *who ... to*), *for whom* (or *who ... for*). It must agree in gender and number with the noun it refers to.

La silla, al lado de *la cual*  
estaba sentado el gato

El tejado, sobre *el cual* la  
policía ha descubierto  
al criminal

Los soldados, contra *los*  
*cuales* luchan

Las casas, detrás de *las*  
*cuales* están los árboles

The chair beside which the cat  
was sitting  
(‘The chair the cat was sitting beside’)

The roof on which the police  
discovered the criminal  
(‘The roof the police discovered the  
criminal on’)

The soldiers against whom they  
are fighting  
(‘The soldiers they are fighting  
against’)

The houses behind which are the  
trees  
(‘The houses the trees are behind’)

### 3.8.4 *Cuyo/a, cuyos/as* – whose

You use **cuyo/cuya/cuyos/cuyas** when you want to say *whose*. The word has to agree in gender and number with the noun it refers to.

El coche *cuyo* motor es ruidoso.

La princesa *cuya* nariz es grande.

El hombre *cuyos* niños son  
pesados

El hotel *cuyas* habitaciones son  
caras

The car whose engine is noisy

The princess whose nose is big

The man whose children are  
irritating

The hotel whose rooms are  
expensive

- I** Complete the sentences using the appropriate form of **que, quien, el cual** or **cuyo** as best fits the meaning of the sentence.

- a** ¿Quién es la chica \_\_\_\_ vi en el parque? Who is the girl I saw in the park?
- b** No conozco a la señora \_\_\_\_ vive aquí. I don't know the woman who lives here.
- c** No sé \_\_\_\_ dirigirme sobre todo esto. I don't know who to talk to about all this.
- d** Éste es el chico \_\_\_\_ coche me atropelló. This is the boy whose car ran me over.
- e** Es una persona de \_\_\_\_ no sé nada. She is a person about whom I know nothing.
- f** Busco a un español \_\_\_\_ vive en Roma. I'm looking for a Spanish man who lives in Rome.

### 3.9 *Éste/ésta, ése/ésa, aquél/aquélla* – this, that, etc.

There are three demonstrative pronouns in Spanish which do the same job as *this* and *that* in English. They agree in number and gender with the noun they are referring to, and each has a different function according to how far away the object being referred to is from the person who is speaking.

When you would use *this* in English (i.e. for something right next to you), use **éste/ésta** (etc.). For something that is a bit further away, but is still near you, use **ése/ésa** (etc.). Finally, for things that are even further away, use **aquél/aquélla** (etc.). Here is a table of all three words in all their forms. In practice, Spanish people use **éste** and **aquél** most, and **ése** comes in useful when all three pronouns are needed together.

meaning	singular		plural	
	masculine	feminine	masculine	feminine
this (next to you)	éste	ésta	éstos	éestas
that (near you)	ése	ésa	esos	ésas
that (further away)	aquél	aquélla	aquellos	aquéllas

Note the neuter pronouns *esto*, *eso* and *aquello*. They are used to refer to a general idea rather than to something specific. For example, *mi padre me habla de la guerra, pero no me interesa esto/eso/aquello*. My father tells me about the war, but this/that doesn't interest me.



¿Cuál de los anillos prefieres?  
 Prefiero éste. Tú prefieres aquél,  
 ¿verdad?  
 ¿Cuáles de las flores prefieres?  
 Yo prefiero éstas, y tú prefieres  
 ésas, ¿verdad? Pero mi  
 madre prefiere aquéllas.

Which ring do you prefer?  
 I prefer this one (here). You prefer  
 that one (there), don't you.  
 Which flowers do you prefer?  
 I prefer these, and you prefer  
 those, don't you? But my  
 mother prefers those over  
 there.

**I** Say you want to order *these* things.

Para la boda, quiero ...

- a** un novio hermoso
- b** unas damas de honor
- c** un traje de novia
- d** una alianza de oro
- e** un collar de plata
- f** una diadema bonita
- g** unos pendientes de plata
- h** un ramo de flores
- i** unos zapatos blancos
- j** unos guantes blancos

**II** Say you want *those* things, using **ése** or **aqué**.

... y como regalos ...

- a** unas sábanas
- b** una cama cómoda
- c** unas mantas
- d** un espejo
- e** unos manteles
- f** un armario grande
- g** una cocina de gas
- h** un congelador
- i** una batería de cocina
- j** unos vasos bonitos

**III** Look back at the examples and your answer to 2.7.2  
 II. Rewrite them, replacing the nouns preceded by  
 demonstrative adjectives with demonstrative pronouns  
 wherever possible. To help, here is the example again, with  
 the words to be replaced in italics. NB: don't forget the  
 accents!

No me gusta este libro, prefiero *ese libro*, pero me encanta *aquel libro*.  
 Odio esta tableta gris, me gusta bastante *esa tableta* blanca, pero  
 quiero *aquella tableta* azul.

Estos móviles Nokia son feos, *esos móviles* son demasiado caros, pero  
 me molan *aquellos móviles*.

## 3.10 ▶ Fast track: pronouns

A pronoun is a word which stands for a noun.

Subject pronouns

A subject pronoun stands for the person who or thing which does the action described by a verb: *I, you ...* etc.

They can be used in front of verbs and to replace a person or thing you have already mentioned. In Spanish they are often missed out because the verb ending does their job (which is to show who or what the verb is referring to).

They are:

singular		plural	
yo	I	nosotros/as	we
tú	you (familiar)	vosotros/as	you (familiar)
él	he	ellos	they (m)
ella	she	ellas	they (f)
usted	you (formal)	ustedes	you (formal)

Direct object pronouns: me, you, etc.

A direct object pronoun stands in for the person who or object which has the action done to it.

They are:

singular		plural	
me	me	nos	us
te	you (familiar)	os	you (familiar)
le/lo	him/it	les/los	them (m)
la	her/it	las	them (f)
le/lo/la	you (formal)	les/los/las	you (formal)

In English, they come after the verb. In Spanish they come in front of the verb, except that they can be put on the end of present participles and infinitives. They also *must* be put on the end of positive commands.

Le veo.	I see him. (lit: him I see.)
Ella me ve.	She sees me. (lit: She me sees.)
Yo lo veo.	I see him/it. (lit: I him see.)
No les vemos.	We don't see them. (lit: Not them we see.)



In the perfect tense the pronouns always come before the part of **haber**.

Indirect object pronouns: to me, to him, etc.

In English, the indirect object pronouns are the same as the direct object pronouns, but have (or can have) *to* or *for* in front of them. In Spanish, there is a special set of them, but it is very similar to the set of direct object pronouns.

They are:

singular	plural
me – to me	nos – to us
te – to you (familiar)	os – to you (familiar)
le – to him/her/it	les – to them
le – to you (formal)	les – to you (formal)



Most of these are the same as the direct object pronouns.

If you have more than one pronoun, either in front of the verb or on the end of it, the indirect object pronoun always goes first.

yo		me	me	
tú		te	te	
él		le	lo/le	
ella		le	la	
usted		le	le/lo/la	
nosotros/as	(no)	nos	nos	(verb)
vosotros/as		os	os	
ellos		les	les/los/las	
ellas		les	les/los/las	
ustedes		les	les/los/las	

**NB:** When two third person pronouns together would both begin with **l-**, the indirect pronoun, usually referring to a person, is changed to **se**.

Disjunctive pronouns

The disjunctive (or prepositional) pronouns are used after prepositions, e.g. *for me, with us*: **para mí; con nosotros**.

There are three special forms: **conmigo** and **contigo**, which are used in the singular for *with me* and *with you* (familiar form), and **consigo**, which is only used for true reflexive situations.

The usual forms are as follows:

singular	plural
mí – me	nosotros/as – us
ti – you (familiar)	vosotros/as – you (familiar)
él – him/it	ellos – them (m)
ella – her/it	ellas – them (f)
sí – ...self	sí – ...selves
usted – you (formal)	ustedes – you (formal)

### Interrogative words

Most interrogative words are pronouns or adverbs. They are used to ask questions like *Who?* or *What?*

¿Quién(es)?	who? (referring to the subject of a sentence or clause)
¿Quién(es)?	whom? (referring to the object of a sentence or clause)
¿De quién(es)?	whose?
¿Qué?	what?, which?
¿Cuál? ¿Cuáles?	which?, which one?
¿Cuánto/a? ¿Cuántos/as?	how much?, how many?

*Mío, tuyo* – mine, yours, etc.

These are called possessive pronouns. They translate the English *mine, yours, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs*. They have to agree with the noun they are replacing.

mine	el mío	la mía	los míos	las mías
yours (familiar sing.)	el tuyo	la tuya	los tuyos	las tuyas
his/hers/its	el suyo	la suya	los suyos	las suyas
yours (formal sing.)	el suyo	la suya	los suyos	las suyas
ours	el nuestro	la nuestra	los nuestros	las nuestras
yours (familiar pl.)	el vuestro	la vuestra	los vuestros	las vuestras
theirs (masc. and fem.)	el suyo	la suya	los suyos	las suyas
yours (formal pl.)	el suyo	la suya	los suyos	las suyas

*Que, quien, el cual, cuyo* – who, whose, which

These are called relative pronouns. They translate *who, that, which* and *whose* when they are used to refer to someone or something already mentioned.

que	who/whom, which, that
quien	(with, for, etc.) whom
el/la cual, los/las cuales	who/whom, which
cuyo/a, cuyos/as	whose

*éste/ésta, ése/ésa, aquél/aquélla* – this, that, etc.

These are called demonstrative pronouns. **Éste/ésta** translates *this* and **aquéél/aquélla** translates *that*, but there is an extra word (**ése/ésa**) for things that are not right next to you and not a long way away (so they are quite near).

singular		plural	
masc	fem	masc	fem
éste	ésta	éstos	éestas
ése	ésa	ésos	ésas
aquéél	aquélla	aquéellos	aquéllas

# 4 ADJECTIVES

What is an adjective?

▶▶ **If you know what an adjective is, go on to 4.1.**

Adjectives are 'describing' words. You use them to say what something or someone is like.

**I** Highlight the adjectives in these sentences.

- a** Peter is short and fat.
- b** She has long, blond hair and green eyes.
- c** He has just bought a new computer.
- d** She likes to wear new clothes for parties and casual clothes for gardening.
- e** Her car is large and old and has four-wheel drive.
- f** Her boyfriend is tall and dark.
- g** She manages a small insurance company.
- h** He has an older sister and a younger brother.
- i** Her favourite dish is paella.
- j** He likes his beer very cold.

## 4.1 Adjectival agreement

In Spanish, the adjective 'agrees' with the noun. Most singular adjectives end in **-o** when they are used with a masculine noun, and these change their ending to **-a** with a feminine noun. Like nouns, they form the plural by adding **-s**.



There are adjectives which don't work quite like this.

▶▶ **If you know about adjectival agreement, go on to 4.3 Fast track.**

	singular		plural	
	masculine	feminine	masculine	feminine
new	nuevo	nueva	nuevos	nuevas
old	antiguo	antigua	antiguos	antiguas

I Fill in the right form of **nuevo, nueva, nuevos, nuevas** or **antiguo, antigua, antiguos, antiguas** (your choice).

- a** un coche \_\_\_\_  
**b** una casa \_\_\_\_  
**c** sombreros \_\_\_\_  
**d** sillas \_\_\_\_  
**e** un tren \_\_\_\_  
**f** una televisión \_\_\_\_  
**g** ordenadores \_\_\_\_  
**h** ciudades \_\_\_\_

### 4.1.1 Adjectives ending in **-o**

Most adjectives end in **-o** in the masculine singular and change as follows:

- If the noun is masculine singular, the adjective ends in **-o**: **nuevo, antiguo**.
- If the noun is feminine singular, the adjective ends in **-a**: **nueva, antigua**.
- If the noun is masculine plural, the adjective ends in **-os**: **nuevos, antiguos**.
- If the noun is feminine plural, the adjective ends in **-as**: **nuevas, antiguas**.

meaning	singular		plural	
	masculine	feminine	masculine	feminine
new	nuevo	nueva	nuevos	nuevas
little	pequeño	pequeña	pequeños	pequeñas
good	bueno	buenas	buenos	buenas
white	blanco	blanca	blancos	blancas

### 4.1.2 Adjectives ending in **-e**

If an adjective ends in **-e**, it doesn't change between the masculine and feminine singular. However, it does have an **-s** on the end in the masculine and feminine plural:

meaning	singular		plural	
	masculine	feminine	masculine	feminine
green	verde	verde	verdes	verdes
strong	fuerte	fuerte	fuertes	fuertes

### 4.1.3 Adjectives ending in a consonant

If an adjective ends in a consonant, again it doesn't change in the singular, but it has **-es** on the end in the masculine and feminine plural (this is to make it easier to say, because an **s** after a consonant would be difficult to pronounce).

meaning	singular		plural	
	masculine	feminine	masculine	feminine
blue	azul	azul	azules	azules
weak	débil	débil	débiles	débiles

### 4.1.4 Other patterns

If an adjective ends in **-ete** or **-ote**, the **-e** becomes **-a** in the feminine singular, and **-s** is added to both of these to make the plural forms.

meaning	singular		plural	
	masculine	feminine	masculine	feminine
chubby	regordete	regordeta	regordetes	regordetas

If an adjective ends in **-a**, both singular forms are the same (because you obviously couldn't add another **a** in the feminine!), and **-s** is added to make the plural.

meaning	singular		plural	
	masculine	feminine	masculine	feminine
cycling	ciclista	ciclista	ciclistas	ciclistas
Communist	comunista	comunista	comunistas	comunistas

NB. when used as a noun, these words end in **-a** even when masculine.

If an adjective ends in **-án**, **-ín**, **-ón** or **-or**, it has a separate feminine form ending in **-a**, and different plural forms for masculine (**-es**) and feminine (**-as**). Note that when there is an accent on the last syllable of the adjective in the masculine form, it disappears in the feminine and plural.

meaning	singular		plural	
	masculine	feminine	masculine	feminine
lazy	holgazán	holgazana	holgazanes	holgazanas
chatty	parlanchín	parlanchina	parlanchines	parlanchinas
grumpy	gruñón	gruñona	gruñones	gruñonas
hard-working	trabajador	trabajadora	trabajadores	trabajadoras



## I Fill the gaps in the table.

meaning	singular		plural	
	masculine	feminine	masculine	feminine
<b>a</b> happy	feliz	feliz	felices	felices
<b>b</b> sad	triste	triste	tristes	tristes
<b>c</b> short	corto	corta	cortos	cortas
<b>d</b> tall/big	grande	___	grandes	grandes
<b>e</b> weak	___	débil	débiles	débiles
<b>f</b> strong	fuerte	fuerte	fuertes	fuertes
<b>g</b> intelligent	inteligente	inteligente	___	inteligentes
<b>h</b> stupid	estúpido	estúpida	estúpidos	estúpidas
<b>i</b> pretty	guapo	___	guapos	guapas
<b>j</b> easy	fácil	fácil	___	fáciles
<b>k</b> polite	cortés	cortés	cortesés	cortesés
<b>l</b> good	bueno	bueno	buenos	buenas
<b>m</b> bad	malo	___	malos	malas
<b>n</b> young	joven	joven	jóvenes	___
<b>o</b> wide	ancho	ancha	anchos	anchas
<b>p</b> thin	delgado	___	delgados	delgadas
<b>q</b> hard-working	trabajador	trabajadora	trabajadores	___
<b>r</b> clean	limpio	limpia	limpios	limpias
<b>s</b> dirty	sucio	sucia	sucios	sucias
<b>t</b> friendly	amistoso	amistosa	___	amistosas

## II Give the right form of the adjectives in brackets.

- a** Mi tío es \_\_\_\_ (gordo)  
**b** Mi tía no es \_\_\_\_ (gordo)  
**c** Mi hermana es \_\_\_\_ (holgazán)  
**d** Mis padres no son \_\_\_\_ (bueno)  
**e** Mi hermano es \_\_\_\_ (trabajador)  
**f** Su amiga no es \_\_\_\_ (trabajador)  
**g** Mis amigas son \_\_\_\_ (bueno)  
**h** Mis abuelos son \_\_\_\_ (bueno)  
**i** ¡Esta agua no es \_\_\_\_! (natural)  
**j** Las fotos son \_\_\_\_ (natural)  
**k** Granada es una ciudad \_\_\_\_ (viejo)  
**l** El Señor Ramírez es un profesor de español \_\_\_\_ (viejo)  
**m** La Haya es la capital de los Países \_\_\_\_ (Bajo)  
**n** La silla es demasiado \_\_\_\_ (bajo)  
**o** Es una casa \_\_\_\_ (nuevo)  
**p** Hay un hotel \_\_\_\_ en esta calle. (nuevo)  
**q** Los televisores \_\_\_\_ son muy \_\_\_\_ (nuevo, caro)

- r** Esta calle es muy \_\_\_\_ (ancho)  
**s** Tenemos un coche \_\_\_\_ (grande)  
**t** Mis notas son \_\_\_\_ (bueno)

### 4.1.5 Adjectives of nationality

Most adjectives of nationality or regional origin end in an **-o** or a consonant. These all end in **-a** in the feminine singular (replacing the **-o** if there was one), whilst the masculine plurals end in **-os** or **-es** as appropriate, and the feminine plurals end in **-as**. The accent on the masculine singular form, if any, is not needed on the other forms. Nationalities which end in **-a** and **-e** don't change in the singular, but add **-s** in the plural; the few ending in **-í** only add **-es** for the plural. Note that adjectives of nationality do not begin with a capital letter.

meaning	singular		plural	
	masculine	feminine	masculine	feminine
Italian	italiano	italiana	italianos	italianas
Swiss	suizo	suiza	suizos	suizas
Russian	ruso	rusa	rusos	rusas
American	americano	americana	americanos	americanas
Spanish	español	española	españoles	españolas
German	alemán	alemana	alemanes	alemanas
French	francés	francesa	franceses	francesas
Scottish	escocés	escocesa	escoceses	escocesas
English	inglés	inglesa	ingleses	inglesas
Belgian	belga	belga	belgas	belgas
Canadian	canadiense	canadiense	canadienses	canadienses
Moroccan	marroquí	marroquí	marroquíes	marroquíes

#### I Fill in the nationalities in the correct form.

- a** Sebastian Vettel es \_\_\_\_  
**b** Lewis Hamilton es \_\_\_\_  
**c** Madonna es \_\_\_\_  
**d** Pedro Almodóvar es \_\_\_\_  
**e** Plácido Domingo y José Carreras son \_\_\_\_  
**f** Bradley Wiggins y Kelly Holmes son \_\_\_\_  
**g** Andrea Bocelli es \_\_\_\_  
**h** Tom y Martha viven en Washington: son \_\_\_\_  
**i** Billy Connolly es \_\_\_\_  
**j** Estos señores son de Montreal – son \_\_\_\_

## 4.1.6 Colours

Most adjectives of colour agree in the same way as other adjectives, and they always come after the noun they describe: *a red car* becomes *a car red*: **un coche rojo**; *the White House* becomes *the house white*: **la Casa Blanca**.



Choose a phrase to memorise to help you remember the order: **un sombrero blanco; un gato negro**, for example.

meaning	singular		plural	
	masculine	feminine	masculine	feminine
red	rojo	roja	rojos	rojas
yellow	amarillo	amarilla	amarillos	amarillas
blue	azul	azul	azules	azules
green	verde	verde	verdes	verdes
black	negro	negra	negros	negras
white	blanco	blanca	blancos	blancas
grey	gris	gris	grises	grises
pink	rosado	rosada	rosados	rosadas
brown	marrón	marrón	marrones	marrones
orange	naranja	naranja	naranja	naranja
purple	violeta	violeta	violeta	violeta

Most adjectives of colour form their agreements using the same rules as other adjectives, but **marrón** only has the one singular form and the one plural form.

NB: **naranja** and **violeta** are really nouns, so in this adjectival use they are invariable, i.e. they don't change for masculine/feminine and plurals. *Rosa* ('rose') can be used in the same way for 'pink', sometimes with color, e.g. in *un sombrero rosa*, or *un vestido (de) color rosa*, but *rosado* is used more.

### I Complete the sentences with the right form of the colour given in brackets.

- Marta lleva una falda \_\_\_\_ (rojo)
- Sus sombreros son \_\_\_\_ (marrón)
- El médico lleva una camisa \_\_\_\_ (verde)
- Su impermeable es \_\_\_\_ (azul)
- María lleva un vestido \_\_\_\_ (naranja)
- Sus zapatos son \_\_\_\_ (blanco)
- Carlos lleva un jersey \_\_\_\_ (violeta)
- Sus sandalias son \_\_\_\_ (amarillo)
- Javier lleva un cinturón \_\_\_\_ (negro)
- Sus botas son \_\_\_\_ (gris)
- Su bufanda es \_\_\_\_ (rosado)

### 4.1.7 Apocopation

Some adjectives shorten when they come before a noun.

This is called **apocopation**. **Bueno, malo, primero, tercero, alguno, ninguno, ciento** and **santo** change in the masculine singular only. When they are used after a noun they keep their usual form, but if they are used before a masculine singular noun (see 4.2 below) they lose their final **-o**, and **ciento** and **santo** lose the **t** before it as well. **Grande** becomes **gran** before any singular noun (masculine or feminine).

Hace buen tiempo.	It's good weather.
Un mal día.	A bad day.
El primer presidente de la república.	The first president of the republic.
El tercer hombre en la cola.	The third man in the queue.
No hay ningún chico aquí.	There are no boys here.
El Gran Premio de España.	The Spanish Grand Prix ('big prize').
Tiene cien mil euros.	He has 100,000 euros.
San Sebastián, San José.	San Sebastián, San José.

(But **Santo Domingo, Santo Tomás** – male saints' names beginning with **Do-** and **To-** – do not apocopate, to avoid confusion.)

NB: **alguno** and **ninguno** (see 2.7.4) need an accent on the **-u-** in the apocopated form: **algún, ningún**.

#### I Complete the sentences with the right form of the adjective given in brackets.

- Hace \_\_\_\_ tiempo. (malo)
- El \_\_\_\_ piso a la derecha. (primero)
- Vive en \_\_\_\_ José, en los Estados Unidos. (Santo)
- El Maybach es un \_\_\_\_ coche. (grande)
- La Madre Teresa era una \_\_\_\_ mujer. (grande)
- No hay \_\_\_\_ chica aquí. (ninguno)
- ¡Haces un \_\_\_\_ café! (bueno)
- Tengo \_\_\_\_ euros. (ciento)
- El \_\_\_\_ coche es el Mercedes de la Mafia. (tercero)
- ¿Tienes \_\_\_\_ día libre? (alguno)

#### II Rewrite a version of the following, including adjectives wherever possible to express your like/approval. Then rewrite it, this time using adjectives to express your disapproval. You could include *mu*y, *más* or *menos* with the adjective when appropriate.

Hoy iré al zoo con mis hijos en mi coche. Veremos los animales: elefantes, jirafas, leones y tigres, y monos. Visitaremos el lago

donde hay patos y gansos, y la casa de los réptiles con serpientes y lagartos. Vamos a llevar un picnic: bocadillos, patatas fritas, fruta y bebidas.

## 4.2 The position of adjectives

In English, adjectives come in front of the noun they are describing: *a large house, a fast car*. In Spanish, most adjectives come after the noun (*a house large, a car fast*). A few adjectives can come before the noun, particularly the ones which apocope as described in 4.1.7 above.

There are a few adjectives which change their meaning according to whether they come before or after the noun:

una vieja amiga	an old friend (i.e. someone you have known for ages!)
una amiga vieja	an old friend (i.e. someone who isn't young any more!)
un pobre hombre	a poor man (i.e. someone something bad has happened to!)
un hombre pobre	a poor man (i.e. someone who hasn't got very much money!)
El Rey don <i>Felipe</i> es un gran hombre.	King <i>Felipe</i> is a great man.
El Rey don <i>Felipe</i> es un hombre grande.	King <i>Felipe</i> is a large man.

## 4.3 ► Fast track: Adjectives

### Agreement

- 1 Adjectives are describing words. They agree with the noun they describe, i.e. they usually end in **-o** for masculine nouns, **-a** for feminine nouns, **-os** for masculine plural nouns and **-as** for feminine plural nouns.
- 2 Adjectives ending in **-e** have the same form for both masculine and feminine singular, and add **-s** (for both masculine and feminine) in the plural.
- 3 If an adjective ends in a consonant, it again doesn't change in the singular, but it adds **-es** for both masculine and feminine plural.
- 4 If an adjective ends in **-ete** or **-ote**, the **-e** becomes **-a** in the feminine singular; and **-s** is added to both of these to make the plural forms.
- 5 If an adjective ends in **-a**, both singular forms are the same and **-s** is added to make the plural.

- 6 Adjectives ending in **-án, -ín, -ón** or **-or** have a separate feminine form ending in **-a**, and different plural forms for masculine (**-es**) and feminine (**-as**).
- 7 Adjectives of nationality or regional origin ending in **-o** or a consonant have feminine singular in **-a**, masculine plurals in **-os** and **-es** as appropriate, feminine plurals in **-as**; any accent on the masculine singular is not needed on the other forms. Nationalities ending in **-a** and **-e** don't change in the singular, but add **-s** in the plural; the few ending in **-í** add **-es** for the plural.

singular		plural	
masculine	feminine	masculine	feminine
1 un jersey rojo	una camisa roja	jerseys rojos	camisas rojas
2 un coche verde	una moto verde	coches verdes	motos verdes
un hombre fuerte	una mujer fuerte	hombres fuertes	mujeres fuertes
3 un libro azul	una bolsa azul	libros azules	bolsas azules
4 un chico	una chica	chicos	chicas
regordete	regordeta	regordetes	regordetas
5 un hombre	una mujer	hombres	mujeres
comunista	comunista	comunistas	comunistas
6 un chico	una chica	chicos	chicas
holgazán	holgazana	holgazanes	holgazanas
un profesor	una profesora	profesores	profesoras
gruñón	gruñona	gruñones	gruñonas
7 un autor español	una autora española	autores españoles	autoras españolas
un cantante	una cantante	cantantes	cantantes
marroquí	marroquí	marroquíes	marroquíes

### Word order

Most adjectives come after the word they are describing:

una mujer guapa	a beautiful woman
un amigo generoso	a generous friend
un edificio moderno	a modern building

... but these often come in front: **bueno, malo, grande, santo, alguno, ninguno, ciento, primero, tercero** (and other ordinal numbers).

### Apocopation

When the adjectives listed above do come in front of masculine nouns, they apocopate, or lose their ending: **ningún dinero, cien mil euros, el primer piso** but **la primera calle a la derecha**; **grande** apocopates before feminine nouns too: **una gran señora**.

Adjectives with more than one meaning

Some adjectives change their meaning according to whether they come before or after the noun:

una vieja amiga  
una amiga vieja

an old friend (known her for years!)  
an old friend (getting on a bit!)

Colours

Like most other adjectives, the adjectives of colour come after the word they are describing: **un perro negro** – *a black dog*. Most colours take the same endings as other adjectives: **amarillo, amarilla, amarillos, amarillas**.

## 4.4 Big, bigger, biggest: the comparative and superlative

The **comparative** is the form you use when you are comparing two things and say, for example, that something is *bigger, smaller, newer, older*, etc.

The **superlative** is the form you use to say something is the *best, biggest, smallest, best of all*.

adjective	comparative	superlative
big un coche grande	bigger un coche más grande	biggest el coche más grande
small un coche pequeño	smaller un coche más pequeño	smallest el coche más pequeño



As **grande** and **pequeño** are adjectives, they still have to agree with the noun they describe: **una casa más pequeña** – *a smaller house*; **la casa más pequeña** – *the smallest house*.

### 4.4.1 Comparing two people or things

In Spanish, you put **más** (*more*) in front of the adjective, and where one thing is compared directly with another, **que** is used for *than*. A handful of adjectives have one-word comparative forms (see 4.4.4).

El Señor García es importante, pero el Señor Pérez es más importante.

Señor García is important but Señor Pérez is more important.

Luis es pequeño, pero su hermana es más pequeña.

Luis is small but his sister is smaller.

Ricardo es inteligente, pero su hermano es más inteligente que él. Ricardo is intelligent but his brother is more intelligent than him.

### I Say the second things are all more ... than the first.

- a Este coche es rápido, pero aquél es \_\_\_\_.
- b Tu hermana es guapa, pero mi hermana es \_\_\_\_.
- c Nuestros perros son grandes, pero los vuestros son \_\_\_\_.
- d Las poesías de Machado son muy interesantes, pero las de Lorca son \_\_\_\_.
- e El examen de español es difícil, pero el de matemáticas es \_\_\_\_.
- f Portugal es un país hermoso, pero España es \_\_\_\_.
- g Esta casa es muy cara, pero aquélla es aún \_\_\_\_.
- h Mis padres son pobres, pero los tuyos son \_\_\_\_.
- i Tú vas a comprar un collar precioso, pero yo voy a comprar uno \_\_\_\_.
- j Esta bicicleta es bonita: pero buscamos otra \_\_\_\_ para nuestro hijo.

To say something is *less* ... you use **menos** instead of **más**.  
Again, **que** is used for *than*.

Alejandro es menos viejo que su hermano. Alejandro is less old (younger) than his brother.

### II Say these things are more (+) or less (-).

- a (+) El Ferrari es \_\_\_\_ rápido que el McLaren.
- b (+) Un Mercedes es \_\_\_\_ caro que un Seat.
- c (-) Nicolás es \_\_\_\_ inteligente que su hermana.
- d (+) La culebra (snake) es \_\_\_\_ peligrosa que el alacrán (scorpion).
- e (-) El lince es \_\_\_\_ grande que el lobo.
- f (+) La Sierra Nevada es \_\_\_\_ alta que la Sierra de Guadarrama.
- g (-) La isla de la Gomera es \_\_\_\_ pequeña que la isla de Tenerife.
- h (+) Santander se encuentra \_\_\_\_ al norte que Salamanca.
- i (-) La plata es \_\_\_\_ valiosa que el oro.
- j (+) El Rey don Felipe es \_\_\_\_ famoso que el Presidente del Gobierno.

## 4.4.2 The superlative: 'the most ...' and 'the least ...'

To say *the most* and *the least* you use **más** and **menos**; if these don't have the noun described immediately in front of them, they are preceded by the definite article that matches the noun. The adjective has to agree with the noun in gender and number, as usual.

el/la/los/las ... más ...

el/la/los/las ... menos ...

La casa más pequeña/Esta casa es la más pequeña.

El perro menos caro/Este perro es el menos caro.

Las niñas más listas/Estas niñas son las más listas.

Los chicos menos tontos/Estos chicos son los menos tontos.



**I Say these animals are the most (+).**

- a** (+) El oso pardo es el animal \_\_\_\_ raro que existe en España.
- b** (+) El alacrán es el bicho \_\_\_\_ peligroso de España.
- c** (+) La ballena (**whale**) es el mamífero \_\_\_\_ grande de todos los mamíferos.
- d** (+) De todos los insectos, el mosquito es \_\_\_\_ peligroso porque lleva la malaria.
- e** (+) De todos los animales, las jirafas son \_\_\_\_ altas del mundo.
- f** (+) Las serpientes \_\_\_\_ venenosas se encuentran en Australia.
- g** (+) De todas las arañas, \_\_\_\_ venenosa se llama la viuda negra.
- h** (+) Las medusas (**jellyfish**) más grandes son \_\_\_\_ mortíferas.

**II And in Spain: complete these sentences with 'the most' (+) and the correct form of the adjective.**

- a** La montaña \_\_\_\_ se llama el Mulhacén. (+ alto)
- b** El río \_\_\_\_ es el Ebro. (+ largo)
- c** La región \_\_\_\_ se llama Los Monegros, y está situada al este de Zaragoza (+ seco)
- d** De todas las regiones, \_\_\_\_ es Galicia, en el noroeste. (+ lluvioso)
- e** La ciudad \_\_\_\_ es Bilbao, en el País Vasco. (+ industrializado)
- f** Entre las cuevas de España, \_\_\_\_ se llama la Cueva de Altamira. (+ famoso)
- g** Las estalagmitas \_\_\_\_ se encuentran en la Cueva de Nerja. (+ interesante)
- h** El actor español \_\_\_\_ se llama Antonio Banderas. (+ conocido)
- i** La actriz \_\_\_\_ se llama Penélope Cruz, y trabaja en Hollywood. (+ guapo)
- j** La ciudad \_\_\_\_ de España es Sagunto: fue fundada hace más de dos mil años. (+ antigua)

### 4.4.3 Saying 'as (big) as'

If you are comparing two things that are similar, you use the expression **tan (grande) como: as (big) as**. As always, the adjectives have to agree with the noun they are describing.

Es tan grande como su padre.                      He is as tall as his father.  
Es tan raro como su hermano.                      He is as strange as his brother.

(Don't forget that *as much/many as* is **tanto(s)/tanta(s) como** and not **tan mucho como**.)

**I Say these places are (1) bigger than; (2) smaller than; (3) as big as ... (Remember to make the adjective agree with the noun where necessary.)**

- a** El Hotel Bellavista es \_\_\_\_ el Hotel Meliá. (3)
- b** La ciudad de Madrid es \_\_\_\_ la ciudad de Barcelona. (1)

- c El puerto de Santander es \_\_\_\_ el puerto de Bilbao. (2)  
 d Los hipermercados *Hipercor* son \_\_\_\_ los hipermercados *Al Campo*. (2)  
 e La región autonómica de Extremadura es \_\_\_\_ la de Andalucía. (2)  
 f Las Torres Kio son \_\_\_\_ que el Palacio de la Comunicación. (1)

## II Make these things (1) more, (2) less or (3) just as ... as.

- a El Pico del Teide es \_\_\_\_ el Mulhacén. (1 alto)  
 b El río Guadalquivir es \_\_\_\_ el río Ebro. (2 largo)  
 c El clima de Canarias es \_\_\_\_ el clima de España. (1 caluroso)  
 d El panorama de la sierra es \_\_\_\_ el panorama del lago. (3 hermoso)  
 e La natación es \_\_\_\_ el footing. (1 agotador)

### 4.4.4 Better, worse, older and younger: irregular comparisons

The words for *better* and *worse* are irregular and do not form their comparative with **más** or **menos**. Similarly, *bigger/older and smaller/younger* are often translated by one-word comparative forms. These four words are the same for masculine and feminine, and add **-es** in the plural.

better	mejor
worse	peor
bigger/older	mayor
smaller/younger	menor

As with the other comparisons, *than* is expressed by **que**, and it is just omitted if there is no follow-up to the comparison (in other words if only one thing is said to be better, worse, etc.)

Juanita es menor que Josefa.  
 El francés es bueno pero el español es mejor.

Again as with other comparatives, to make the superlative (*best, worst, etc.*) simply put **el/la/los/las** in front of the comparative form (see 4.4.2).

Dicen que el rioja es el mejor vino de España.	They say rioja is the best wine in Spain.
--	---

## I How would you say these things are better?

- a Este valdepeñas es bueno, pero el rioja que compraste ayer es \_\_\_\_.  
 b Mi hijo sacó \_\_\_\_ notas este año que el año pasado.  
 c El café es bueno, pero el chocolate es aún \_\_\_\_.  
 d Estas reproducciones son casi \_\_\_\_ que los originales.  
 e El clima de Venezuela es \_\_\_\_ que el clima de Chile.  
 f Las playas del Sardinero son \_\_\_\_ que la playa de Langre.

## II How would you say these are the best, according to don Pablo?

Según don Pablo ...

- a El rioja es \_\_\_ vino de Europa.
- b Los vinos españoles son \_\_\_ de Europa.
- c Las cantantes españolas son \_\_\_ del mundo.
- d La Sierra Nevada es \_\_\_ sierra de Europa.
- e Iberia es \_\_\_ línea aérea de Europa.
- f Los cocineros españoles son \_\_\_ del mundo.
- g Madrid es \_\_\_ capital del mundo.
- h España es \_\_\_ país de Europa.

### 4.4.5 ► **Fast track:** Comparative and superlative

The comparative

The comparative is the form you use when you are comparing two things and say, for example, that something is *bigger, smaller, newer, older, etc.*

In English, we can either add *-er* or use the word *more*:

green → *greener* or *more green*

healthy → *healthier* or *more healthy*

tired → *tireder* or *more tired*

In Spanish, there is only one way: you add the word **más** (*more*) or **menos** (*less*):

más verde; más limpio/a; menos cansado/a

As the word is an adjective it still must agree with the noun:

La hierba es más verde ...

The grass is greener ...

Está menos cansada que yo.

She is less tired than I.

The superlative

When you are talking about *the best* or *the worst* you use the superlative.

In Spanish, the superlative is made by inserting **el, la, los** or **las** before the **más** or **menos** unless the article is already used in front of the noun:

el/la más verde; el/la más limpio/a, los/las más cansados/as

As the word is an adjective it must still agree with the noun:

El niño más estúpido.

Esta chica es la más inteligente.

Las historias más interesantes.

NB: After a superlative, Spanish uses **de** to express *in*, e.g. *the ... est in the world*.

Better, worse, older and younger

The words for *better*, *worse*, *bigger/older* and *smaller/younger* (**mejor**, **peor**, **mayor** and **menor**) are irregular one-word comparisons. They have the same form for masculine and feminine and add **-es** for the plural.

**Que** is omitted if there is no follow-up to the comparison:

El francés es bueno pero el español es mejor.

The same words are used with the definite article to mean *best*, *worst*, *biggest/eldest* and *smallest/youngest*.

- I** Find three ways to compare and contrast the following pairs, using *más ... que*, *menos ... que*, *tan ... como* and *el/la/los/las más ...*:

e.g. mi moto es *más rápido* que tu coche, pero es *menos cómodo*; tu coche es *el más cómodo*.

marido/mujer

hijo/hija

amigo/amiga

casa/oficina

pueblo/ciudad

televisor/radio

móvil/tableta

perro/gato

colegio/universidad

reloj/pulsera

# 5 ADVERBS

## What is an adverb?

Adverbs are words which describe the action of a verb: she drives *fast*; he speaks *loudly*.

Some adverbs can qualify an adjective or adverb, e.g. *very* (fast), *quite* (loud), *too* (hard).

## 5.1 Formation of adverbs

### 5.1.1 Regular adverbs

Adverbs are words which describe an action: *well*, *fast*, *slowly*, etc.

Many Spanish adverbs are formed by adding **-mente** to the feminine singular form of an adjective, if this is different from the masculine singular. If there was an accent on the adjective, it remains on the adverb:

dulce → dulcemente	gently
lento/lenta → lentamente	slowly
rápido/rápida → rápidamente	quickly
feroz/feroz → ferozmente	ferociously

#### I Make these adjectives into adverbs.

<b>a</b> seco	<b>f</b> sincero
<b>b</b> loco	<b>g</b> raro
<b>c</b> sencillo	<b>h</b> feliz
<b>d</b> rápido	<b>i</b> verdadero
<b>e</b> enorme	<b>j</b> serio

### 5.1.2 Irregular adverbs

bueno/buena → bien	well
malo/mala → mal	badly

### 5.1.3 Pairs of adverbs

When two adverbs are used together, only the second one has **-mente** on the end. The first one is always in the feminine form, however.

rápida y seguramente	quickly and safely
----------------------	--------------------

## 5.2 Other useful adverbs

The following adverbs are very common, so it is worth learning them:

muy	very
bastante	quite
demasiado	too
poco	little
despacio	slowly

Some adverbs of time:

siempre	always
a veces	sometimes
muchas veces	often

## 5.3 Comparison of adverbs

The comparative and superlative of adverbs are formed and used in exactly the same way as those of adjectives (see 4.4).

Felipe trabaja menos rápidamente que su hermana.	Felipe works less quickly than his sister.
María corre más lentamente que su amiga.	Maria runs more slowly than her friend.

**I** How would you say the following?

<b>a</b> Speak more slowly, please!	¡Habla más _____, por favor!
<b>b</b> He is completely mad.	Está _____ loco.
<b>c</b> That's not strictly true!	¡No es _____ la verdad!
<b>d</b> It's too expensive.	Es _____ caro.
<b>e</b> Speak more loudly, please.	Hable más _____ por favor.

## 5.4 ► Fast track: Adverbs

In English, most words which end in *-ly* are adverbs: *naturally, romantically, sadly*, etc.

In Spanish, many adverbs are made by adding **-mente** to the feminine singular form of an adjective, if it is different from the masculine:

dulce	→ dulcemente
seguro/segura	→ seguramente
regular	→ regularmente

If there was an accent on the original adjective, it remains:

rápido/rápida → rápidamente

Some useful adverbs:

bien

mal

poco

mejor

fuerte

siempre

a veces

muchas veces

well

badly

little

better

loudly/strongly

always

sometimes

frequently/often

These words are often used with another adverb or adjective:

muy

very

muy pequeño

very small

muy guapo

very beautiful

bastante

quite

bastante feo

quite ugly

poco

not very

poco hermoso

not very beautiful

demasiado

too

demasiado caro

too expensive

# 6 PREPOSITIONS

## 6.1 Recognising prepositions



**If you know what a preposition is, go on to 6.2.**

Prepositions are words like *in*, *on*, and *under*. Unlike adjectives, they do not change. They are usually used in conjunction with a noun or pronoun, e.g. *in the cupboard*, *near the station*, *for her*, *with me*.

Prepositions can tell you:

- **where** a person or thing is, i.e. their/its position:

sobre la mesa	on the table
debajo del puente	under the bridge

- **how** something is, i.e. manner:

con mantequilla	with butter
sin agua	without water

- **when** something happens, i.e. time:

dentro de cinco minutos	in five minutes
después de la cena	after dinner

- **for whom** something is done:

para mí	for me
---------	--------

## 6.2 Using prepositions

### 6.2.1 *a* and *en*

The principal usage of **a** is to translate *to*, although sometimes it can mean *at* or *in*. It usually indicates motion to a place. Note that **a** combines with **el** to become **al** – *to the* with masculine singular nouns.

Escribo a mi amigo.

I am writing *to* my friend.

Volvemos a casa.

We are going (*to*) home.

Vamos al pueblo.

We are going *to the* town.

El tren llega a Barcelona a las dos.

The train arrives *at/in* Barcelona *at* two o'clock.



**En** is usually used to show something's position *at* or *in* a place or thing:

Estamos en casa.

We are *at* home.

El tren está en la estación.

The train is *in* the station.

Vivo en Madrid.

I live *in* Madrid.

### 6.2.2 *por* and *para*

The meaning of **para** is usually *for*, *in order to*, expressing destination and intention; the main meaning of **por** is usually translated as *by*, *through* or *because of* – but occasionally it can also mean *for*. A useful rule of thumb is that *para* tends to look forward, *por* tends to look back.

¿Es para ti?

Is it for you?

Para mí un helado, por favor.

For me an ice-cream, please.

Estoy citado para las ocho.

I have an appointment for eight o'clock.

Pasamos por Madrid.

We passed through Madrid.

No podemos ver por los árboles.

We can't see for (because of) the trees.

Lo hago por ti.

I am doing it for you (for your sake).

### 6.2.3 *con* and *sin*

The meaning of **con** is usually *with*, and the main meaning of **sin** is usually translated as *without*. **Sin** is usually used without the definite article. When **con** is used with certain personal pronouns it changes to the special forms **conmigo**, **contigo**, **consigo** (see 3.4).

Patatas fritas con salsa de tomate, por favor.

Chips with tomato sauce please.

Mi madre viene conmigo.

My mother is coming with me.

Una botella de agua mineral sin gas, por favor.

A bottle of mineral water without gas, please.

### 6.2.4 *de* and *entre*

The meaning of **de** is usually *of*, but it can also mean *from* or *for* according to the context. Note that **de** combines with **el** to become **del** – *from the* with masculine singular nouns. **De** also figures in **expressions** of belonging and saying what something is made of. **Entre** means *between* or *among*.

Vengo de Madrid.

I have come from Madrid.

Bebo una taza de té.

I am drinking a cup of tea.

but Compro una taza de té.

I buy a teacup (= cup for tea).

/una taza para té

Es la casa de mi amigo.

It is my friend's house.

Quiero un helado de vainilla.

I want a vanilla ice-cream.

Entre los árboles.  
Entre las casas.  
Entre nosotros.

Among the trees.  
Between the houses.  
Between/Among us.

### 6.2.5 *hacia* and *hasta*

The meaning of **hacia** is usually *towards*, and **hasta** usually translates *until*, *up to* or *as far as*.

Hacia el tejado.	Towards the roof.
Hacia la cima.	Towards the top.
Hasta mañana.	Until tomorrow.
Hasta luego.	Until then (i.e. 'see you later')

### 6.2.6 *según*

The meaning of **según** is *according to (what)*. It corresponds to *selon* in French. By itself it means *it depends*.

Según mi madre.	According to my mother.
Según piensa.	According to what he thinks.
¿Vienes conmigo? Según.	Are you coming with me? It depends.

### 6.2.7 *sobre*, *en* and *encima de*

**Sobre** and **en** both mean *on*, and can be used with either horizontal or vertical surfaces. **Encima de** (and sometimes **sobre**) means *on top of*, and **encima de** can also mean *above*.

Está en la pared.	It is on the wall.
Está sobre la silla.	It is on the chair.
Está encima de la mesa.	It's on (top of) the table.
Encima de la ventana.	Above the window.

If 'above' has an idea of movement through a space, use *por encima de*.

### 6.2.8 *detrás de*, *tras* and *después de*

The meaning of **detrás de** is *behind*. **Tras** has the same meaning and can also mean *after* or *as a result of*.

**Después de** means *after*.

Detrás de la tienda.	Behind the shop.
Después del/Tras el programa.	After the programme.

### 6.2.9 *delante de*, *ante* and *enfrente de*

**Delante de** and **ante** mean *in front of*. **Ante** can also mean *faced with* or *in the presence of*. **Enfrente de** means *opposite*.

### 6.2.10 *desde*

**Desde** means *from* (a place) and is also used for *since* in time expressions. (For **desde hace** see 1.8.10.)

La vista desde el balcón es espectacular.

The view from the balcony is spectacular.

Vivo aquí desde abril.

I've been living here since April.

**I** How would you say you were going to these places? Take care with **al** ...

Voy ...

**a** la playa

**f** la discoteca

**b** el hotel

**g** el teatro

**c** la piscina

**h** la estación de servicio

**d** el hospital

**i** el banco

**e** el museo

**j** el cajero automático (cashpoint)

**II** Say what these things are made of or who they belong to. Take care with **del** ...

**a** un bocadillo \_\_\_ jamón

a ham sandwich

**b** un helado \_\_\_ chocolate

a chocolate ice-cream

**c** los libros \_\_\_ chicas

the girls' books

**d** el coche \_\_\_ profesor

the teacher's car

**e** el maletero \_\_\_ coche

the boot of the car

**f** una taza \_\_\_ café

a cup of coffee

**g** una botella \_\_\_ vino tinto

a bottle of red wine

**h** el jardín \_\_\_ amigos

the friends' garden

**i** la carta \_\_\_ mi madre

my mother's letter

**j** una tortilla \_\_\_ patatas

a potato omelette

**III** Complete these sentences with the correct preposition(s). Take care with **a** and **de** if followed by **el**.

**a** Anoche fui \_\_\_ pueblo \_\_\_ mi amigo.

Last night I went to town with my friend.

**b** Pasamos un par de horas \_\_\_ el bar.

We spent a couple of hours in the bar.

**c** Allí, charlamos \_\_\_ dos chicas guapas.

There we chatted to two pretty girls.

**d** Después, fuimos \_\_\_ cafetería.

Then we went to the cafeteria.

**e** La cafetería está \_\_\_ bar.

The cafeteria is opposite the bar.

**f** \_\_\_ cenar, fuimos \_\_\_ discoteca.

After having dinner, we went to the disco.

**g** Las dos chicas bailaron \_\_\_ nosotros.

The two girls danced with us.

**h** Nos quedamos \_\_\_ medianoche.

We stayed until midnight.

**6.2.11** ► **Fast track:** Prepositions

Prepositions are words like *in*, *on* and *under*. They do not change. They tell you:

[www.cervantes.ir](http://www.cervantes.ir)

- **where** a person or thing is, i.e. its position
  - **how** something is done, i.e. manner
  - **when** something happens, i.e. time
  - **for whom** something is done
- etc.

*a* and *en*

**A** expresses movement: it usually means *to*, occasionally *at* or *in*. **En** means *at* or *in*, indicating position.

*por* and *para*

**Para** means *for*, *in order to*, expressing destination and intention; **por** usually means *for*, *by*, *through* or *because of*.

*con* and *sin*

The meaning of **con** is usually *with*, and **sin** is usually translated as *without*.

*de* and *entre*

The meaning of **de** is usually *of*, *from* or *for*, and it is used to express ownership and what something is made of. **Entre** means *between* or *among*.

*hacia* and *hasta*

**Hacia** usually means *towards*, and **hasta** is usually *until*, *up to* or *as far as*.

*según*

The meaning of **según** is *according to (what)*. By itself it means *it depends*.

*sobre*, *en* and *encima de*

**Sobre** and **en** mean *on*. **Encima de**, and sometimes **sobre**, mean *on top of* or *above*.

*detrás de*, *tras* and *después de*

**Detrás de** means *behind*. **Tras** can mean *behind*, *after* or *as a result of*. **Después de** means *after*.

*delante de*, *enfrente de* and *ante*

**Delante de** and **ante** mean *in front of*. **Ante** can mean *faced with* or *in the presence of*. **Enfrente de** means *opposite*.

*desde*

**Desde** usually means *from* or *since*.

7

# CONJUNCTIONS AND OTHER USEFUL WORDS

Here are some useful words for joining two parts of a sentence or filling in gaps in a conversation. These are often called connectives.

y	and
o	or
pero	but
porque	because
entonces	then
por tanto	then, so
en todo caso	anyway
pues bien ...	well then ...
aquí lo tiene	here it is
¡caramba!	oh dear!
es todo	that's all

- When **y** is followed by a word beginning with **i-** or **hi-** it changes to **e**. For example, *Pepe e Isabel; hijos e hijas*.
- When **o** is followed by a word beginning with **o-** or **ho-** it changes to **u**. For example, *Diez u once; mujeres u hombres*.

# APPENDIX I: VERB TABLES

This section lists regular verb forms and the main irregular verb forms for the tenses covered in this book. For those who wish to take their studies further, the present subjunctive and imperfect subjunctive tenses have been included.

Emboldened verb forms indicate a stem-change from the infinitive.

## Regular verbs

Infinitive	Present indicative	Present subjunctive	Imperative	Future	Conditional	Imperfect indicative	Preterite	Imperfect subjunctive	Gerund Past participle
-ar verbs <b>pasar</b> to pass, spend (time), happen	pasó pasas pasa pasamos pasáis pasan	pase pases pase pasemos paséis pasen	pasá (tú) pase Vd pasad (vosotros) pasen Vds	pasaré pasarás pasará pasaremos pasaréis pasarán	pasaría pasarías pasaría pasaríamos pasaríais pasarían	pasaba pasabas pasaba pasábamos pasabais pasaban	pasé pasaste pasó pasamos pasasteis pasaron	pasara / pasase pasaras / pasases pasara / pasase pasáramos / pasásemos pasarais / pasaseis pasaran / pasasen	pasando pasado
-er verbs <b>beber</b> to drink	bebo bebes bebe bebemos* bebéis* beben	beba bebas beba bebamos bebáis beban	bebe (tú) beba Vd bebed* (vosotros) beban Vds	beberé beberás beberá beberemos beberéis beberán	bebería beberías bebería beberíamos beberíais beberían	bebía bebías bebía bebíamos bebíais bebían	bebí bebiste bebíó bebimos bebisteis bebieron	bebiera / bebiese bebieras / bebieses bebiera / bebiese bebieramos / bebiéramos / bebiésemos bebierais / bebieseis bebieran / bebiesen	bebiendo bebido

<b>-ir verbs</b> <b>subir</b> to go up, come up	subo	suba	subiré	subiría	subía	subí	subiera / subiese	subiendo
	subes	subas	subirás	subirías	subías	subiste	subieras / subieses	
	sube	suba Vd	subirá	subiría	subía	subió	subiera / subiese	
	subimos*	subamos	subiremos	subiríamos	subíamos	subimos	subiéramos / subiésemos	subido
	subís*	subáis	subiréis	subiríais	subías	subisteis	subierais / subieseis	
	suben	suban	subirán	subirían	subían	subieron	subieran / subiesen	

\*These are the only three forms where regular **-er** and **-ir** verbs have different endings



## The main irregular verbs

Infinitive	Present indicative	Present subjunctive	Imperative	Future	Conditional	Imperfect indicative	Preterite	Imperfect subjunctive	Gerund Past participle
<b>caber</b> to fit, be contained	<b>quepo</b> cabe cabe cabemos cabéis caben	<b>quepa</b> <b>quepas</b> <b>quepa</b> <b>quepamos</b> <b>quepáis</b> <b>quepan</b>	 cabe <b>quepa</b> Vd	cabré cabrás cabrá cabremos cabréis cabrán	cabría cabrías cabría cabríamos cabrías cabrían	cabía cabías cabía cabíamos cabíais cabían	cupe cupiste cupo cupimos cupisteis cupieron	cupiera / cupiese cupieras / cupieses cupiera / cupiese cupiéramos / cupiésemos cupierais / cupieseis cupieran / cupiesen	cabiendo      cabido
<b>caer</b> to fall	<b>caigo</b> caes cae caemos caéis	<b>caiga</b> <b>caigas</b> <b>caiga</b> <b>caigamos</b> <b>caigáis</b>	 cae <b>caiga</b> Vd  caed	caeré caerás caerá caeremos caeréis	caería caerías caería caeríamos caerías	caía caías caía caíamos caíais	caí caíste cayó caímos caísteis	cayera / cayese cayeras / cayeses cayera / cayese cayéramos / cayésemos cayerais / cayeseis	cayendo      caído

	caen	<b>caigan</b>	caerán	caerían	caían	cayeran / cayesen	
<b>conducir</b> to drive, lead and all other verbs ending in <b>-ducir</b>	<b>conduzco</b>	<b>conduzcan</b>	conduciré	conduciría	conducía	<b>condujera / condujese</b>	conduciendo
	conduces	conduce	conducirás	conducirías	conducías	<b>condujeras / condujeses</b>	
	conduce	<b>conduzca</b> Vd	conducirá	conduciría	conducía	<b>condujera / condujese</b>	
	conducimos	<b>conduzcamos</b>	conduciremos	conduciríamos	conducíamos	<b>condujéramos / condujésemos</b>	conducido
	conducís	<b>conduzcáis</b>	conduciréis	conduciríais	conducíais	<b>condujeráis / condujeseis</b>	
	conducen	<b>conduzcan</b> Vds	conducirán	conducirían	conducían	<b>condujeran / condujesen</b>	
<b>dar</b> to give	<b>doy</b>	<b>dé</b>	daré	daría	daba	<b>diera / diese</b>	dando
	das	des	darás	darías	dabas	<b>dieras / dieseis</b>	
	da	<b>dé</b> Vd	dará	daría	daba	<b>diera / diese</b>	
	damos	demos	daremos	daríamos	dábamos	<b>diéramos / diésemos</b>	dado
	dais	deis	daréis	daríais	dabais	<b>dierais / dieseis</b>	
	dan	den	darán	darían	daban	<b>dieran / diesen</b>	
<b>decir</b> to say, tell	<b>digo</b>	<b>diga</b>	<b>diré</b>	<b>diría</b>	decía	<b>dijera / dijese</b>	<b>diciendo</b>
	dices	<b>digas</b>	<b>dirás</b>	<b>dirías</b>	decías	<b>dijeras / dijeses</b>	
	<b>dice</b>	<b>diga</b> Vd	<b>dirá</b>	<b>diría</b>	decía	<b>dijera / dijese</b>	dicho
	decimos	<b>digamos</b>	<b>diremos</b>	<b>diríamos</b>	decíamos	<b>diéramos / diésemos</b>	

## Appendix I: verb tables

Infinitive	Present indicative	Present subjunctive	Imperative	Future	Conditional	Imperfect indicative	Preterite	Imperfect subjunctive	Gerund Past participle
	decís <b>dicen</b>	<b>digáis</b> <b>digan</b>	decid <b>digán</b> Vds	<b>diréis</b> <b>dirán</b>	<b>diríais</b> <b>dirían</b>	decíais decían	<b>dijisteis</b> <b>dijeron</b>	<b>dijerais / dijeseis</b> <b>dijeran / dijeren</b>	
<b>estar</b> to be	<b>estoy</b> <b>estás</b> <b>está</b> estamos estáis <b>están</b>	<b>esté</b> <b>estés</b> <b>esté</b> estemos estéis <b>estén</b>	decid <b>está</b> <b>esté</b> Vd estad <b>estén</b> Vds	estaré estarás estará estaremos estaréis estarán	estaría estarías estaría estaríamos estaríais estarían	estaba estabas estaba estábamos estabais estaban	<b>estuve</b> <b>estuviste</b> <b>estuvo</b> <b>estuvimos</b> <b>estuvisteis</b> <b>estuvieron</b>	<b>estuviera / estuviese</b> <b>estuvieras / estuvieses</b> <b>estuviera / estuviese</b> <b>estuviéramos / estuviésemos</b> <b>estuvierais / estuvieseis</b> <b>estuvieran / estuviesen</b>	estando    estado
<b>haber</b> to have (as auxiliary verb only) <b>hay</b> = there is/are	<b>he</b> <b>has</b> <b>ha (hay)</b> <b>hemos</b>	<b>haya</b> <b>hayas</b> <b>haya</b> <b>hayamos</b>	<b>habré</b> <b>habrás</b> <b>habrá</b> <b>habremos</b>	<b>habría</b> <b>habrías</b> <b>habría</b> <b>habríamos</b>	habría habrías habría habríamos	había habías había habíamos	<b>hube</b> <b>hubiste</b> <b>hubo</b> <b>hubimos</b>	<b>hubiera / hubiese</b> <b>hubieras / hubieses</b> <b>hubiera / hubiese</b> <b>hubiéramos / hubiésemos</b>	habiendo   habido

habéis	habáis	habréis	habríais	habíais	hubierais / hubieseis hubieran / hubiesen	haciendo
<b>han</b>	<b>hayáis</b>	<b>habrán</b>	<b>habrían</b>	<b>habían</b>		
<b>hacer</b> to do, make	<b>hago</b>	<b>haré</b>	<b>haría</b>	<b>hacía</b>	<b>hiciera / hiciese</b>	
haces	<b>hagas</b>	<b>harás</b>	<b>harías</b>	<b>hacías</b>	<b>hicieras / hicieseis</b>	
hace	<b>haga</b>	<b>hará</b>	<b>haría</b>	<b>hacía</b>	<b>hiciera / hiciese</b>	
hacemos	<b>hagamos</b>	<b>haremos</b>	<b>haríamos</b>	<b>hacíamos</b>	<b>hiciéramos / hiciésemos</b>	<b>hecho</b>
hacéis	<b>hagáis</b>	<b>haréis</b>	<b>haríais</b>	<b>hacíais</b>	<b>hicierais / hicieseis</b>	
hacen	<b>hagan</b>	<b>harán</b>	<b>harían</b>	<b>hacían</b>	<b>hicieran / hiciesen</b>	
<b>ir</b> to go	<b>vaya</b>	<b>iré</b>	<b>iría</b>	<b>iba</b>	<b>fuera / fuese</b>	<b>yendo</b>
<b>vas</b>	<b>vayas</b>	<b>irás</b>	<b>irías</b>	<b>ibas</b>	<b>fueras / fueses</b>	
<b>va</b>	<b>vaya</b>	<b>irá</b>	<b>iría</b>	<b>iba</b>	<b>fuera / fuese</b>	ido
<b>vamos</b>	<b>vayamos</b>	<b>iremos</b>	<b>iríamos</b>	<b>íbamos</b>	<b>fuéramos / fuésemos</b>	
<b>vais</b>	<b>vayáis</b>	<b>iréis</b>	<b>iríais</b>	<b>ibais</b>	<b>fuerais / fueseis</b>	
<b>van</b>	<b>vayan</b>	<b>irán</b>	<b>irían</b>	<b>iban</b>	<b>fuieran / fuesen</b>	
<b>oír</b> to hear	<b>oiga</b>	<b>oiré</b>	<b>oiría</b>	<b>oía</b>	<b>oyera / oyese</b>	<b>oyendo</b>
<b>oyes</b>	<b>oigas</b>	<b>oirás</b>	<b>oirías</b>	<b>oías</b>	<b>oyeras / oyeses</b>	

## Appendix I: verb tables

Infinitive	Present indicative	Present subjunctive	Imperative	Future	Conditional	Imperfect indicative	Preterite	Imperfect subjunctive	Gerund Past participle
	<b>oye</b> oímos	<b>oiga</b> <b>oigamos</b>	<b>oiga</b> Vd	oirá oíremos	oíría oíríamos	oía oíamos	<b>oyó</b> oímos	<b>oyera / oyese</b> <b>oyéramos / oyésemos</b>	oído
	oís	<b>oigáis</b>	oíd	oiréis	oíríais	oíais	oísteis	<b>oyerais / oyeseis</b>	
	<b>oyen</b>	<b>oigan</b>	<b>oigan</b> Vds	oirán	oírían	oían	<b>oyeron</b>	<b>oyeran / oyesen</b>	
<b>poder</b> to be able, can	<b>puedo</b>	<b>pueda</b>		<b>podré</b>	<b>podría</b>	podía	<b>pude</b>	<b>podiera / pudiese</b>	<b>pidiendo</b>
	<b>puedes</b>	<b>puedas</b>		<b>podrás</b>	<b>podrías</b>	podías	<b>podiste</b>	<b>podieras / pudieses</b>	
	<b>puede</b>	<b>pueda</b>		<b>podrá</b>	<b>podría</b>	podía	<b>pudo</b>	<b>podiera / pudiese</b>	
	podemos	podamos		<b>podremos</b>	<b>podríamos</b>	podíamos	<b>podimos</b>	<b>podiéramos / pudiésemos</b>	podido
	podéis	podáis		<b>podréis</b>	<b>podrías</b>	podíais	<b>podisteis</b>	<b>podierais / pudieseis</b>	
	<b>pueden</b>	<b>puedan</b>		<b>podrán</b>	<b>podrían</b>	podían	<b>pusieron</b>	<b>pusieran / pusiesen</b>	
<b>poner</b> to put	<b>pongo</b>	<b>ponga</b>		<b>pondré</b>	<b>pondría</b>	ponía	<b>puse</b>	<b>pusiera / pusiese</b>	poniendo
	pones	<b>pongas</b>	<b>pon</b>	<b>pondrás</b>	<b>pondrías</b>	ponías	<b>pusiste</b>	<b>pusieras / pusieses</b>	
	pone	<b>ponga</b>	<b>ponga</b> Vd	<b>pondrá</b>	<b>pondría</b>	ponía	<b>puso</b>	<b>pusiera / pusiese</b>	

<b>ponemos</b>	<b>pongamos</b>	<b>pondremos</b>	<b>pondríamos</b>	poníamos	<b>pusimos</b>	<b>pusiéramos / pusierais / pusieran / pusiesen</b>	<b>puesto</b>
ponéis	<b>pongáis</b>	<b>pondréis</b>	<b>pondrías</b>	poníais	<b>pusisteis</b>		
ponen	<b>pongan</b>	<b>pondrán</b>	<b>pondrían</b>	ponían	<b>pusieron</b>		
<b>quiero</b>	<b>quiera</b>	<b>querré</b>	<b>querría</b>	quería	<b>quise</b>	<b>quisiera / quisiese</b>	queriendo
<b>quieres</b>	<b>quieras</b>	<b>querrás</b>	<b>querrías</b>	querías	<b>quististe</b>	<b>quisieras / quisieses</b>	
<b>quiere</b>	<b>quiera</b>	<b>querrá</b>	<b>querría</b>	quería	<b>quiso</b>	<b>quisiera / quisiese</b>	
queremos	queramos	<b>querremos</b>	<b>querríamos</b>	queríamos	<b>quisimos</b>	<b>quisiéramos / quisiésemos</b>	querido
queréis	queráis	<b>querréis</b>	<b>querrías</b>	queríais	<b>quististeis</b>	<b>quisierais / quisieseis</b>	
<b>quieren</b>	<b>quieran</b>	<b>querrán</b>	<b>querrían</b>	querían	<b>quisieron</b>	<b>quisieran / quisiesen</b>	
<b>sé</b>	<b>sepa</b>	<b>sabré</b>	<b>sabría</b>	sabía	<b>supe</b>	<b>supiera / supiese</b>	sabiendo
sabes	<b>sepas</b>	<b>sabrás</b>	<b>sabrías</b>	sabías	<b>supiste</b>	<b>supieras / supieses</b>	
sabe	<b>sepa</b>	<b>sabrá</b>	<b>sabría</b>	sabía	<b>supo</b>	<b>supiera / supiese</b>	
sabemos	<b>sepamos</b>	<b>sabremos</b>	<b>sabríamos</b>	sabíamos	<b>supimos</b>	<b>supiéramos / supiésemos</b>	sabido
sabéis	<b>sepáis</b>	<b>sabréis</b>	<b>sabríais</b>	sabíais	<b>supisteis</b>	<b>supierais / supieseis</b>	

## Appendix I: verb tables

Infinitive	Present indicative	Present subjunctive	Imperative	Future	Conditional indicative	Imperfect	Preterite	Imperfect subjunctive	Gerund Past participle
	saben	<b>sepan</b>	<b>sepan</b> Vds	<b>sabrán</b>	<b>sabrían</b>	sabrían	<b>supieron</b>	<b>supieran / supiesen</b>	
<b>salir</b> to go out, come out	<b>salgo</b> sales sale salimos salís salen	<b>salga</b> <b>salgas</b> <b>salga</b> <b>salgamos</b> <b>salgáis</b> <b>salgan</b>	<b>sal</b> <b>salga</b> Vd salid <b>salgan</b> Vds	<b>saldré</b> <b>saldrás</b> <b>saldrá</b> <b>saldremos</b> <b>saldréis</b> <b>saldrán</b>	<b>saldría</b> <b>saldrían</b> <b>saldría</b> <b>saldríamos</b> <b>saldríaís</b> <b>saldrían</b>	salia salías salia salíamos salíaís salían	salí saliste salíó salimos salisteís salieron	saliera / saliese salieras / salieses saliera / saliese salieramos / saliésemos salierais / salieseís salieran / saliesen	saliendo salido
<b>ser</b> to be	<b>soy</b> eres es <b>somos</b> <b>sois</b> son	<b>sea</b> <b>seas</b> <b>sea</b> <b>seamos</b> <b>seáis</b> <b>sean</b>	<b>sé</b> <b>sea</b> Vd sed <b>sean</b> Vds	seré serás será seremos seréis serán	sería serías sería seríamos seríaís serían	era eras era éramos eraís eran	<b>fui</b> <b>fuiste</b> <b>fué</b> <b>fuimos</b> <b>fuisteis</b> <b>fueron</b>	<b>fuera / fuese</b> <b>fueras / fueses</b> <b>fuera / fuese</b> <b>fuéramos / fuésemos</b> <b>fuerais / fueseís</b> <b>fueran / fuesen</b>	siendo sido
<b>tener</b> to have	<b>tengo</b> tienes tiene	<b>tenga</b> <b>tengas</b> <b>tenga</b>	<b>ten</b> <b>tenga</b> Vd	<b>tendré</b> <b>tendrás</b> <b>tendrá</b>	<b>tendría</b> <b>tendrían</b> <b>tendría</b>	tenía tenías tenía	<b>tuve</b> <b>tuviste</b> <b>tuvo</b>	<b>tuviera / tuviese</b> <b>tuvieras / tuvieses</b> <b>tuviera / tuviese</b>	teniendo

	tenemos	tengamos	tendremos	tendríamos	teníamos	tuvimos	tuviéramos / tuviésemos	tenido
	tenéis	tengáis	tendréis	tendríais	teníais	tuvisteis	tuvierais / tuvieseis	
	tienen	tengan	tendrán	tendrían	tenían	tuvieron	tuvieran / tuviesen	
<b>traer</b> to bring	<b>traigo</b> traes	<b>traiga</b> traigas	traeré traerás	traería traerías	traía traías	<b>traje</b> <b>trajiste</b>	<b>trajera / trajese</b> <b>trajeras / trajeses</b>	<b>trayendo</b>
	trae	<b>traiga</b> Vd	traerá traeremos	traería traeríamos	traía traíamos	<b>trajo</b> <b>trajimos</b>	<b>trajera / trajese</b> <b>trajéramos /</b> <b>trajésemos</b>	traído
	traemos	<b>traigamos</b>	traeréis	traeríais	traíais	<b>trajisteis</b>	<b>trajerais /</b> <b>trajeseis</b>	
	traéis	<b>traigáis</b>	traerán	traerían	traían	<b>trajeron</b>	<b>trajeran / trajesen</b>	
<b>venir</b> to come	<b>vengo</b> <b>vienes</b>	<b>venga</b> <b>vengas</b>	<b>vendré</b> <b>vendrás</b>	<b>vendría</b> <b>vendrías</b>	venía venías	<b>vine</b> <b>viniste</b>	<b>viniera / viniese</b> <b>vinieras / vinieses</b>	<b>viniendo</b>
	<b>viene</b> venimos	<b>venga</b> Vd	<b>vendrá</b> <b>vendremos</b>	<b>vendría</b> <b>vendríamos</b>	venía veníamos	<b>vino</b> <b>vinimos</b>	<b>viniera / viniese</b> <b>vinieramos /</b> <b>viniésemos</b>	venido
	venís	<b>vengáis</b>	<b>vendréis</b>	<b>vendríais</b>	veníais	<b>vinisteis</b>	<b>vinierais /</b> <b>vinieseis</b>	
	<b>vienen</b>	<b>vengan</b>	<b>vendrán</b>	<b>vendrían</b>	venían	<b>vinieron</b>	<b>vinieran /</b> <b>viniesen</b>	

Note also:

- **andar** has a 'pretérito grave' (**anduve**, etc.) and therefore the imperfect subjunctive is **anduviera/anduviese**, etc.
- **ver** has **veo**, **ves**, etc. in present indicative, **vea**, etc. in present subjunctive and **veía**, etc. in imperfect indicative.
- **abrir**, **cubrir**, **descubrir**, **freír**, **romper** and **volver** have irregular past participles – see 1.4.2.



# APPENDIX II: GRAMMAR: WHAT IS IT?

Any language is a mechanism, and grammar is the system – or the rules and patterns – by which the language works. What follows is a brief explanation of some of the more common and useful grammatical terms to help you to understand these terms.

Here is a quick alphabetical reference table, giving you the number of the paragraph in which you will find the term in question.

accents	1.1.3	indirect object	1.2.3	register	1.5
adjectives	1.2.4	infinitives	1.4.1	regular verb	1.4.5
adverbs	1.2.5	interrogatives	1.2.9	sentence	1.3
clause	1.3	irregular verbs	1.4.5	sentence structure	1.3
comparative	1.2.5	main clause	1.3	singular	1.2.1
conjugation	1.4.5	negatives	1.4.6	spelling	1.1
conjunctions	1.2.8	nouns	1.2.1	style	1.5
consonants	1.1.1	number	1.2.4	subject	1.2.3
definite article	1.2.1	object	1.2.3	subjunctive mood	1.4.4
diphthongs	1.1.1	parts of speech	1.2	subordinate clause	1.3
direct object	1.2.3	person	1.4.2	superlative	1.2.5
finite verbs	1.4.2	phrase	1.3	syllables	1.1.2
gender	1.2.1	plural	1.2.1	tense	1.4.2
indefinite article	1.2.1	prepositions	1.2.7	verb	1.4
indicative mood	1.4.3	pronouns	1.2.2	vowels	1.1.1

## A2.1 Spelling – la ortografía

### A2.1.1 Letters – las letras: vowels and consonants – las vocales y los consonantes

There are two sorts of letters: vowels and consonants.

The **vowels** are *a, e, i, o, u*.

**a** – *mamá, casa*

Mum, house

**e** – *café, jefe*

coffee/café, chief

**i** – *bebí, vino*

I drank, wine

**o** – *coro, dorado*

short, golden

**u** – *muro, murmullo*

wall, murmur

A **diphthong** – **un diptongo** – is a combination of two or more vowels pronounced as a single syllable (but with each vowel keeping its normal sound), such as the following: *caricia, bien, cuanto, bueno, fui, serio* – caress, well, how much, good, I went, serious.

Note that Spanish **never** has more than two vowels together.

All the other letters are called **consonants**, but note that the letter **y** in a sense acts and sounds like the vowel **i** in the word **y** – and.

## A2.1.2 Syllables – las sílabas

These are the consonant + vowel units that make up a word:

a-na-li-sis, re-bel-de, con-clu-si-vo

a-na-ly-sis, re-bel, con-clu-sivo

## A2.1.3 Accents – los acentos

These are the marks written over vowels with one of three functions:

1. to indicate that the stress falls on that syllable of a word with two or more syllables:

bebé, huésped, pájaro,  
cómprate los

baby, guest, bird, buy them for  
yourself

2. to distinguish between two otherwise identical words with different meanings:

de – dé

of/from – give

sí – sí

if – yes/him/her/itself

tu – tú

your – you (subject)

te – té

you (object) – tea

3. to alter the sound of a letter:

niño (-ny-) – child; agüero (*u* and *e* pronounced separately) – augur.

## A2.2 Parts of speech – las categorías gramaticales

### A2.2.1 Noun – el sustantivo

A person, name, animal, thing or concept:

señor, Juana,	gentleman, Juana,
gatito, cuchillo, calidad	kitten, knife, quality

In Spanish, all nouns are either masculine or feminine. This is called **gender – el género**.

The gender of the noun determines the form of the **definite article – el artículo definido** – (the ... *el/la, los/las*) and the **indefinite article – el artículo indefinido** – (a/an ... *un, una*).

A noun can be **singular – singular** – (*un cuento* – a story) or **plural – plural** – (*dos cuentos* – two stories).

### A2.2.2 A pronoun – un pronombre

These are used in place of a noun, so that we don't have to keep repeating it.

Tengo un coche nuevo; <b>lo</b> compré	I have a new car; I bought it
ayer	yesterday.

### A2.2.3 The subject, direct object and indirect object – el sujeto, el objeto directo y el objeto indirecto

The noun or pronoun that *does an action* is called the **subject – el sujeto**, a noun or pronoun that *has the action done to it* is called the **direct object – el objeto directo**. The noun or pronoun that is the *recipient* (i.e. the person or thing something is given, sent, etc. *to* is called the **indirect object – el objeto indirecto**).

subject – el sustantivo:

<b>Mi amiga</b> vive en Granada.	<b>My friend</b> lives in Granada.
<b>Ella</b> estudia allí.	<b>She</b> studies there.

direct object – objeto directo:

Me mandó <b>un texto</b> ;	She sent me <b>a text message</b> ;
<b>lo</b> recibí esta tarde.	I received <b>it</b> this afternoon.

indirect object – objeto indirecto:

Mi novio dio su carnet de conducir **al policía**.  
**Le** explicó cómo ocurrió el accidente.

My boyfriend gave his driving licence **to the policeman**.  
 He explained **to him** how the accident happened.

### A2.2.4 Adjectives – los adjetivos

These describe or ‘qualify’ nouns. They change their form to ‘agree’ with the gender and number of the noun.  
**Number – número** – in this sense means singular or plural.

Un documental **interesante**, una cola **larga**, los rascacielos **más altos**, los pueblos **blancos**

An **interesting** documentary, a **long** queue, the **tallest** skyscrapers, the **white** villages

### A2.2.5 Adverbs – los adverbios

These words describe or qualify verbs, adjectives and other adverbs:

El viejo se levanta **lentamente**      The old man gets up **slowly**  
 Es un chico **bastante** listo      He’s **quite** a clever boy  
 Aquella cantante cantó **muy bien**      That singer sang **very well**

### A2.2.6 The comparative – el comparativo

The comparative of adjectives is used to compare nouns and pronouns, and the comparative of adverbs to compare other parts of speech (i.e. more, less or as ... as):

Una ciudad **más grande**      A **bigger** city  
**Menos claramente**      **Less clearly**  
**Tan simpático como**      **As nice as**

The **superlative – el superlativo** – of adjectives and adverbs is used to indicate ‘the most’ or ‘the least’.

**La** empleada **más importante**      The **most important** employee  
 Este guitarrista toca **mejor**      This guitarist plays **best**

### A2.2.7 Prepositions – preposiciones

Prepositions indicate where something/someone is in relation to another in time or place, or they can indicate direction:

**Con** mi compañero      With my mate  
**Cerca del** instituto      Near school  
**Antes del** congreso      Before the conference  
**A la derecha** de la clínica      To the right of the clinic

They are also used to link verbs together:

Habíamos pagado **antes de** salir      We had paid **before** leaving  
Escucha **sin** contestar                      Listen **without** answering

### A2.2.8 Conjunctions – conjunciones

Conjunctions join words, phrases or clauses to each other  
(NB: these are sometimes known as **connectives**):

Pan <b>y</b> vino	Bread <b>and</b> wine
lentamente <b>pero</b> cuidadosamente	slowly <b>but</b> carefully
volveremos a casa <b>si</b>	we'll go back home <b>if</b> the
hace mal tiempo	weather is bad

### A2.2.9 Interrogatives – interrogativos

These words are used to form questions – the word may remind you of interrogation. Here are some examples:

quién? cuándo? qué?	who? when? what?
---------------------	------------------

## A2.3 Sentence structure – el sintaxis

A **phrase** – **una frase** – is a meaningful group of words:

Para mi amiga un poco de pan	For my friend a bit of bread at
a toda velocidad antes de las	full speed before 9 o'clock
nueve	

A **clause** – **una cláusula** – is a meaningful group of words containing a verb, usually in a tense.

A **main clause** – **una cláusula principal** – is a clause that can stand by itself:

Esta es la mujer ...	This is the man ...
----------------------	---------------------

A **subordinate clause** – **una cláusula subordinada** – is a clause that cannot stand alone, but depends on a main clause:

... Que habla gallego	... Who speaks Gallego/Galician
-----------------------	---------------------------------

A **sentence** – **una oración** – consists of a main clause, and any number of subordinate clauses.

## A2.4 A verb – un verbo

Verbs are words describing an action or state of being:

Marisé lee, piensan, existimos      Marisé reads, they think, we exist

### A2.4.1 The infinitive – el infinitivo

This is the basic form of the verb which you will find in dictionaries and vocabulary lists. It is indeed *in-finite*, i.e. it is not in a tense or person. You could call it the verb ‘in neutral’:

viajar, pensar, existir      to travel, to think, to exist

### A2.4.2 A finite verb – un verbo finito

This is a verb which is in a **tense – un tiempo (verbal)**. A tense relates the verb (i.e. the action) to time – past, present or future – telling you for example when the action took/takes/will take place. There are a number of different tenses in Spanish, which you will find explained in the main part of the book.

Verb tenses vary their endings according to the **person – la persona**. There are three persons: singular – I, you, he/she/noun subject, and three persons plural – we, you, they/noun subject.

### A2.4.3 Indicative mood – el (modo) indicativo

Most verb tenses belong to the **indicative mood – el (modo) indicativo**. For want of a better word, these are the ‘ordinary’ tenses.

### A2.4.4 The subjunctive mood – el (modo) subjuntivo

This is used to express something which is ‘less than fact’, such as where there is doubt about the action expressed, or expressing an action as yet unfulfilled, for example future possibility.

### A2.4.5 A conjugation – una conjugación

This is a group of verbs which all have the same pattern of tense and person changes according to the infinitive. A **regular verb – un verbo regular** – is a verb which follows one of these conjugation patterns. An **irregular verb – un verbo irregular** – is one which does not conform in this way, and whose ‘irregular’ parts have to be learnt separately.

### A2.4.6 The negative – el negativo

This is when you say something does *not*/did *not* happen. It includes other negative words such as never ... /nothing ... etc.

**No** fuimos al instituto hoy

We **didn't** go to school today

**Nunca** van al pueblo

They **never** go to the town

**No** tengo **nada** en el bolsillo

I've got **nothing** in my pocket

## A2.5 Style and register – el estilo y el registro

This refers to the level of formality or informality of the language you are using. Nowadays, the Spanish are less conscious of the style or level of language to be used in a particular situation than they used to be. The *tú/usted* distinction is less important than it used to be: you can use the informal form not just to address a friend or relative, but also to address strangers of your own age group (*¡Hola! ¿Cómo estás?*). It is still safer to use the formal forms with a stranger, particularly if senior to you (*¡Buenos días! ¿Cómo está usted?*). Style and register vary from one Spanish-speaking country to another, as do the precise forms for 'you' which are used (see Sections 1.2.3, 1.2.4, 1.2.6 and 1.2.7.)

Our general advice about using 'familiar' forms is: if in doubt, don't use it with strangers unless, and until, they invite you to!

Mike Zollo  
January 2017

# ANSWERS

## 1.1

**I** a, c, d, i

**II** b, c, f, h, i

### 1.1.1

**I** a to speak b to prepare c to organise d to enter e to travel f to carry/wear g to look at/check h to invite i to wash j to study

**II** a to cook b to dine c to have breakfast d to appreciate e to roast f to have a teatime snack g to pour h to cut i to have to eat or drink j to lunch k to mix

**III** a comenzar b aceptar c separar d evaluar e robar f navegar g publicar h girar i continuar j terminar

### 1.1.2

**I** a 2 vend b 1 mostr c 1 cant d 3 sal e 1 lav f 1 acab g 1 escuch h 1 cerr i 1 dej j 2 cog k 2 escog l 1 llev m 1 regres n 3 ven o 3 dorm

### 1.1.3

**I** a saber b ver c tener d ir e poder f deber g querer h coger i ser j hacer

## 1.1.4

**I** a yo b ella c él d nosotros e vosotras f usted g ellas h ellos

**II** a él b ella c él d ellos e ellas f ellas g yo h ellos i ellos j nosotros

## 1.2

**I** a descargar – to download b telefonar – to telephone/to ring c acompañar – to accompany d ir – to go e (ir a) recoger – to fetch f prestar – to lend g volar – to fly h visitar – to visit i estudiar – to study j cenar – to dine

### 1.2.1

**I** a I am singing b you are eating (familiar sing.) c he/she/it is drinking, you (formal) are drinking d we are working e you are travelling (familiar pl.) f they/you (formal) are going up

### 1.2.2

**I** a hablo b tomo c llevo d trabajo e escucho f toco g visito h miro i llevo j explico

**II** a trabajo b llevo c aparco d entro e saludo f tomo g busco h entro i saco j trabajo



**III** a entro b compro c llamo  
d tomo e pago f envío  
g espero h trato i echo  
j felicito

**IV** a hablo b viajo c quedo  
d llamo e llego f entro  
g compro h espero i ceno  
j mando k charlo l tomo  
m telefono n miro

**V** a beber b comer c correr  
d responder e vender f leer  
g comprender h proceder  
i aprender j creer

**VI** a bebo b como c corro  
d leo e vendo f aprendo  
g procedo h creo i comprendo  
j respondo

**VII** a vivo b subo c sufro  
d escribo e describo f divido  
g recibo h asisto

**VIII** a subo b vivo c decido  
d asisto e discuto f sufro  
g persuado h admito i divido  
j sobrevivo

**IX** a discuto b subo c descubro  
d divido e cubro f abro

**X** a tengo b tengo c sé  
d pongo e salgo f conozco  
g digo h sé i doy

**XI** a quiero b pienso c pido  
d cuento e juego f prefiero  
g vuelvo h duermo

**XII** a me despierto b me levanto  
c me lavo d me ducho e me  
visto f me siento g me pregunto  
h me aburro i me peleo j me  
acuesto

**XIII** a me duele b me hace falta  
c me quedan d me gustan e me

apetece f me encantan g me  
interesan

**XIV** ¡Hola Alberto! Me llamo  
Joanne, pero prefiero Jo. Soy alta  
y rubia. Trabajo en un banco en  
Boston; voy al trabajo en mi coche.  
Me gustan los coches, y ¡me encanta  
mi Alfa Romeo! Cuando tengo  
vacaciones voy a Chicago, y visito a  
mis padres.

### 1.2.3

**I** a bailas b bebes c vives  
d hablas e miras f comes  
g escuchas h escribes i lavas  
j trabajas

**II** a quieres b piensas c pides  
d cuentas e juegas f prefieres  
g vuelves h duermes

**III** a eres b tienes c vas  
d comes e ves f vives g hablas  
h llevas i haces j juegas

**IV** a ii b iv c v d iii e i

**V** a te duelen b te hacen falta  
c te quedan d te gusta e te  
apetece f te encantan g te  
interesan

**VI** a tienes b sales c coges  
d llegas e cenas f vuelves

**VII** a iii b vi c v d vii e i  
f ix g iv h ii i x j viii

**VIII** Querido Alberto: Ya no  
quiero ser tu amiga. Eres egoísta,  
grosero y antipático. No me  
gustas porque hablas demasiado,  
fumas mucho, bailas muy mal, no  
me escuchas, sólo quieres ver el  
fútbol en la tele, y francamente  
me aburres. ¡Basta ya! Adiós para  
siempre, Jo

## 1.2.4

**I** a escribe b canta c navega  
d lee e recibe f vende  
g desea h presta i prepara  
j firma

**II** a juega b piensa c pide  
d cuenta e quiere f prefiere  
g vuelve h duerme

**III** a es b vive c va d coge  
e pasa f llega g tiene h pone  
i llama j vuelve

**IV** a se despierta b se levanta  
c se afeita d se ducha e se lava  
f se seca g se peina h se viste  
i se sienta j se aburre k se pasea  
l se cansa m se acuesta

**V** Estimado Sr Morales, ¿Recuerda usted a mi hijo David? Ahora es ingeniero y trabaja en una empresa que fabrica bicicletas. Le encanta el ciclismo, pues está muy contento. Tiene una bicicleta nueva, y viaja al trabajo en su bici. Tiene una novia, y a menudo se pasea en bicicleta con ella. Le saluda, Mary Brown

**VI** a lee b va c toma  
d duerme e hace f toma g tiene  
h dice

## 1.2.5

**I** a trabajamos b jugamos  
c vemos d cenamos  
e regresamos f vamos g salimos  
h llegamos i compramos  
j tenemos

**II** a somos b hablamos  
c vamos d escogemos e cogemos  
f cambiamos g comprendemos  
h comemos i trabajamos  
j terminamos k jugamos

**III** Nos + a despertamos  
b levantamos c acostamos

d duchamos e damos prisa  
f vestimos g lavamos h paseamos  
i separamos

**IV** a tenemos b somos  
c quedamos d comemos  
e podemos f no venimos g no  
comprendemos h queremos  
i vamos j vemos k salimos  
l llegamos m venimos n hacemos  
o leemos

**V** Hola Guillermo y Laura:  
Somos Lee y Jodie; vivimos en un barrio bonito de San Antonio, Texas. Tenemos dos hijos mayores. Trabajamos en una escuela local, Lee como administrativo, Jodie como maestra. Queremos pasar las vacaciones en Mexico; nos gustaría hacer un intercambio con vosotros. En nuestro tiempo libre, nos gusta jugar al golf y hacer senderismo. Nuestra casa es muy moderna y cómoda; tiene cinco dormitorios. Nuestro barrio es tranquilo, y tiene tiendas buenas y una piscina. En espera de vuestras noticias, Saludos de Lee y Jodie.

## 1.2.6

**II** a ¿Os acordáis de este hombre?  
b ¿Os paseáis por el parque?  
c ¿Os vestís ya? d ¿Os burláis de mí?  
e ¿Os levantáis tarde?  
f ¿Os despertáis temprano?

**III** Hola amigos Guillermo y Laura:  
Para viajar a San Antonio, es más rápido viajar en avión, pero si no tenéis prisa y preferís hacer un viaje más cómodo, también podéis viajar en coche si os gusta; tardaréis unas cinco horas en la autopista. Al llegar a San Antonio, tenéis que seguir la dirección para el centro; luego tomáis la carretera hacia el Alamo.

Si nos llamáis al llegar delante del Alamo, iremos a buscaros. ¡Hasta jueves! Lee y Jodie

### 1.2.7

**I** a juegan b piensan c piden  
d encuentran e quieren  
f prefieren g vuelven h duermen

**II** a quieren b tienen c van  
d dejan e hacen f salen  
g encuentran h buscan i ven  
j llaman

**III** a se despiertan b se levantan  
c se duchan d se preparan  
e salen f van g llegan h se  
aburren i se van

**IV** a obtienen b van c pueden  
d necesitan e tienen f deben  
g suben h viajan

**V** Querida Marta, Tengo dos hijos que me dan mucha guerra. Mi hijo Sean y mi hija Siobhan son gemelos, y hacen casi todo juntos. Dejan sus dormitorios muy desordenados y sucios. Pasan demasiado tiempo jugando con sus consolas de videojuegos, y casi nunca salen a jugar con sus amigos. Son tan perezosos que no me ayudan en la casa. Sin embargo, son muy graciosos y amables, y no me gusta castigarlos. ¡Un consejo, por favor!  
Kate Smith

### 1.2.8

**II** a tengo b estoy c voy  
d cojo e bajo f salgo g cruzo  
h espero i quiero j vuelvo

**II** a tienes b estás c vas  
d coges e bajas f sales g cruzas  
h esperas i quieres j vuelves

**III** a tiene b está c va d coge  
e baja f sale g cruza h espera  
i quiere j vuelve

**IV** a tenemos b estamos  
c vamos d cogemos e bajamos  
f salimos g cruzamos  
h esperamos i queremos  
j volvemos

**V** a tenéis b estáis c vais  
d cogéis e bajáis f salís  
g cruzáis h esperáis i queréis  
j volvéis

**VI** a tienen b están c van  
d cogen e bajan f salen  
g cruzan h esperan i quieren  
j vuelven

**VII** Hola Juanita, ¿Cómo estás? Yo estoy bien, pero mi vida es muy atareada. Trabajo mucho durante el día en la oficina, luego cuando llego a casa a las cinco ¡empieza la diversión! Los niños terminan sus clases a las cuatro, pues tienen que volver a casa a pie. Primero preparo la cena, luego tengo que lavar los platos porque el lavavajillas está roto. Mi marido llega tarde del trabajo, ¡pues no puede ayudar! Pasea al perro mientras yo ayudo a los niños con sus deberes. Acostamos a los niños a las nueve, luego a veces vemos la tele ... y normalmente nos dormimos. Nos acostamos a las once, ¡y tratamos de dormir bien antes de otro día atareado! Abrazos, Jackie

### 1.3.1

**I** a no beben b no escribo c no lee  
d no compramos e no sé  
f no puede g no vienen  
h no quiero i no nos gusta  
j no comes

### 1.3.2

**I** NB: 'ellos' not normally needed, included here in b to j for clarity.

- a** ¿Viven los señores Blanco en Madrid?  
**b** ¿Salen ellos de vacaciones?  
**c** ¿Cogen ellos el tren?  
**d** ¿Van ellos a la Costa del Sol?  
**e** ¿Tienen ellos un apartamento allí?  
**f** ¿Alquilan ellos un coche?  
**g** ¿Juegan ellos al golf?  
**h** ¿Hacen ellos esquí acuático?  
**i** ¿Tienen ellos unos amigos en Fuengirola?  
**j** Por la tarde, ¿cenan ellos en un restaurante?

**II** NB. 'ellos' not normally needed, included here for clarity. **a** ¿Adónde van ellos? **b** ¿Cuándo salen ellos? **c** ¿Cómo viajan ellos? **d** ¿Por qué están ellos en Barcelona? **e** ¿Qué hacen ellos? **f** ¿Con quién tienen ellos una reunión? **g** ¿Cuánto tiempo se quedan ellos en el hotel?

### 1.3.3

**I** **a** cállate **b** no te sientes **c** ten **d** dame **e** sé **f** no vengas **g** sal **h** levántate

**II** **a** iv **b** x **c** xi **d** xii **e** i **f** v **g** ii **h** vi **i** iii **j** ix **k** vii **l** viii

**IV** **a** parece **b** vaya **c** beba **d** coma **e** venga **f** fume **g** haga **h** tome **i** acuéstese **j** duerma

**V** ¡hablen! ¡coman! ¡escriban! sleep! go! come! go to bed!

**VI** **a** gira/gire **b** sube/suba **c** coge/coja **d** sigue/siga **e** ve/vaya **f** mira/mire **g** cruza/cruce **h** coge/coja **i** baja/baje **j** manda(me)/mánde(me)

**VII** **a** precalienta **b** pica **c** bate **d** mete **e** añade **f** mezcla **g** calienta **h** vierte **i** fríe

**VIII** **a** pase **b** coma **c** beba **d** haga **e** cierre **f** abra **g** presente **h** hable **i** venga

**IX** **a** entrad **b** formad **c** buscad **d** corred **e** quedaos **f** estirad **g** haced **h** bajad **i** doblad **j** descansad

**X** **a** salgan **b** giren **c** cojan **d** continúen **e** crucen **f** sigan **g** tuerzan

**XI** **a** ix **b** vii **c** v **d** i **e** viii **f** x **g** iv **h** iii **i** ii **j** xi **k** vi

**XII** Queridos Sean y Siobhan: ¡Ya estoy harta! ¿Por qué no sois hijos buenos? ¿Por qué sois tan perezosos? No arregláis vuestras cosas y no limpiáis vuestros dormitorios. ¿Por qué no los limpiáis una vez a la semana, al menos? ¡Por favor, ayudadme en la casa! Os quiero a los dos, pero por favor, ¡no lo hagáis tan difícil! Mamá

**XIII** Para viajar a San Antonio, decida(n) entre el avión y el coche. Si en coche, tome(n) la autopista entre Monterrey y la frontera, luego coja(n) la autopista hacia San Antonio. Al llegar a San Antonio, siga(n) la dirección para el centro; luego tome(n) la carretera hacia el Alamo. Llame(n) al llegar delante del Alamo, y esperen allí. ¡Hasta jueves! Lee y Jodie

### 1.4

**I** **a** pret **b** pret **c** pret **d** imp **e** pret **f** imp **g** imp **h** imp **i** pret **j** imp

## 1.4.1

**I** a he b has c ha d han  
e han f hemos g habéis h ha  
i ha j hemos

**II** a hemos b han c ha d ha  
e habéis f han g has h he  
i ha j ha

## 1.4.2

**I** a jugado b comido  
c terminado d vendido  
e escuchado f perdido  
g escogido h esperado  
i organizado j invitado  
k lavado l pedido m cerrado  
n empujado o tirado p olvidado  
q salido r entrado s oído  
t partido

**II** a jugado b tomado  
c llamado d hablado e asegurado  
f decidido g enviado h cambiado  
i imprimido j mirado

**III** a visto b escrito  
c puesto d hecho e dicho  
f vuelto

**IV** ha + a ganado b querido  
c visto d comprado e gustado,  
decidido f puesto g hecho  
h visto i creído j seguido  
k excedido l detenido m tenido

**V**

a Sofía ha leído su última novela.  
b ¿Has leído el libro?  
c No hemos leído el libro.  
d Han visto la película del libro.  
e Sofía ha visto la película ayer.  
f Aún no hemos visto la película.  
g Has/Ha/Habéis/Han visto la  
película?

## 1.4.3

**I** a me he + levantado b se ha  
c se ha d se ha e se han

f te has g nos hemos h se han  
i se han j te has

**II** Hola cariño: He preparado la  
cena, y la he dejado en el horno.  
También he hecho los bocadillos  
de los niños para mañana. He  
cambiado las sábanas de nuestra  
cama. Sean ya ha hecho sus deberes,  
pero Siobhan no los ha empezado  
aún; los dos han arreglado sus  
dormitorios y han limpiado sus  
zapatos. Juntos hemos paseado al  
perro. ¿Has ido de compras camino  
de casa? ¿Cómo ha sido tu día en la  
oficina? Besitos, Kate

## 1.4.5

**I** a dormía b veía c leía  
d charlaba e hablábamos  
f duchaba g telefoneaba  
h reparaban i jugaban

**II** a era b iban c éramos  
d eras e iba

**III** a esperaba b escuchabas  
c íbamos d leía e esperaba  
f salía g estaban h hacía i veáis  
j bebía

**IV** a hacía b nevaba c hacía  
d soplaba e brillaba f llovía  
g desaparecía h hacía i había  
j estaba

**V** a era, vivía b estaban c había  
d cultivaba e trabajaban  
f recogían g hacían h había  
i cocinaba j tenía k tardaba

**VI** a me levantaba b me duchaba  
c me vestía d me lavaba e me  
miraba f se levantaba g se  
duchaba h se vestía i nos  
dábamos j se despertaban k se  
enfadaban l se paseaba

**VII** Bueno, toda la familia estaba  
en casa, y todos estábamos en

distintas habitaciones. Yo estaba en la cocina; preparaba la cena. Mi pareja estaba en el jardín; cortaba la hierba. Mi hijo mayor estaba en su dormitorio; hacía los deberes. Mi hija estaba en el salón; estudiaba sus libros de geografía. Mi hijo menor estaba en su dormitorio; jugaba en la consola. El perro comía en la cocina, y el gato dormía en el pasillo. Oímos un ruido curioso: alguien llamaba a la puerta ...

### 1.4.7

**I** a hablé b hablaste c habló  
d hablaron e comieron  
f comimos g ¿comisteis? h vivió  
i vivió j vivimos

**II** a charlé b tomé c llamé  
d hablamos e aseguró  
f decidimos g envió h cambié  
i imprimí j vi

**III** a jugué b crucé c busqué  
d buscamos e cruzamos  
f buscaron g jugó h jugaron

**IV** a dio b dieron c fuimos  
d fui e fue f vi g fui  
h vimos

**V** 1 fuimos 2 quedamos  
3 alquilamos 4 hizo 5 pasé  
6 vinieron 7 divertimos  
8 cenamos 9 bailamos  
10 hicimos 11 fuisteis  
12 hicisteis

**VI** a nos despertamos b nos  
levantamos c nos paseamos  
d nos equivocamos e nos  
perdimos f nos paramos  
g se puso h se acordó  
i se fue

**VII** Al oír el ruido curioso, todos nos asustamos. Yo fui a buscar a

los niños; los niños quedaron en sus dormitorios. El perro empezó a ladrar, y el gato se escondió bajo el sofá. Mi pareja fue a la puerta principal.

### 1.4.9

**I** a vivían, nació b era, se mudó  
c tenía, nació d sufrió, tenía  
e cruzaba, se paró f vio, esperaba  
g tenía, pasó h estudiaba, decidió  
i hacía, vio j trabajaba, conoció  
k era, solicitó l hacía, se casaron

**II** Como hacía buen tiempo ayer, mi amigo Ben y yo decidimos ir a la costa en bicicleta. Ben vino a buscarme a las diez. Puse unos bocadillos y dos manzanas en mi mochila; Ben llevaba cuatro latas de Fanta y dos paquetes de patatas fritas. Salimos de mi casa a las diez y media; la ruta fue bastante interesante, con varias cuestas y bajadas. Cuando llegamos a la playa una hora más tarde, empezó a llover. Entonces Ben sugirió el cine, que estaba cerca. Vimos 'Los amantes pasajeros', una comedia negra de Almodóvar. ¡Fue muy divertido!

### 1.5.1

**I** a voy b vas c va d va  
e vamos f vais g van h van  
i van j voy

**II** a van b va c va d van e va  
f va g va h vamos i va j vais

### 1.5.2

**I** a miraremos b prepararás  
c meteréis d comerán  
e permitirá f escribirá g llegarán  
h entraremos i partiré  
j subirán

**II** a llevaré b llevará c llevará  
d llevará e llevarán f llevarán  
g llevaremos h llevará i llevarás

**III** a tendré b vendréis c harás  
d habremos e saldrá f sabrá  
g querrán h diremos i pondréis  
j podrán k tendrá l vendré

**IV** a tendré b iré c haré  
d enviaré e irás f vendrás,  
iremos g podremos, será, costará  
h volveré, trabajaré

**V** a saldremos b cogerán  
c esperará, llevará d podrá  
e comerán f podrán g hará,  
tendrán

### 1.5.3

**VI** a comería b bebería  
c dormiría d hablaría e viviría  
f compraría g pediría  
h escucharía i miraría

**VII** a jugaría b jugaría c jugarían  
d jugaríamos e jugaríais

**VIII** a preferiría b preferiría  
c preferirían d preferiríamos  
e preferiría

**IX** a me gustaría b le apetecería  
c le encantaría d les interesaría  
e te apetecería f os gustaría g le  
gustaría h les gustaría

**X** a haría b saldría c tendría  
d diría e vendría f podría  
g pondría h sabría i querría  
j habría

**XI** a podría b podríamos  
c podríamos d podría e podrías  
f podría g podrían h podríamos  
i podríamos j podríamos

**XII** El verano próximo, no vamos a pasar las vacaciones juntos en familia; en lugar de eso cada miembro de la familia va a hacer

algo distinto. Sean pasará las vacaciones con su amigo en las montañas; harán senderismo cada día. Siobhan irá a París con su amiga Jane y su familia; visitarán museos y galerías de arte. Mi pareja y yo iremos a las Bahamas. Pasaremos dos semanas en un hotel al lado del mar, y pasaremos cada día en la playa. Llevaríamos a los hijos, pero entonces tendríamos que pagar para ellos también, y no estaríamos libres. En lugar de eso, ¡podremos relajarnos solos!

### 1.6.3

**I** a venir b coger c hacer  
d sentirse e estar f tener  
g saber h poder i tener  
j querer

**II** Querida Marta, ¡Necesito que me aconsejes! No creo que sea una buena idea que mi hijo Sean vaya de vacaciones a las montañas con su amigo. Temo que se pierdan. Me preocupo de que el tiempo sea malo y que su ropa no sea adecuada. ¡No quiero que Sean se haga daño! Estoy contenta de que mi hija Siobhan vaya a París con su amiga y sus padres. Sin embargo, ¡me preocupo de que se aburra con tantos museos y galerías de arte! ¡Quiero que me convenzas de que me preocupo demasiado! Atentamente, Kate Smith

### 1.8.2

**I**  
a Tengo dolor de cabeza.  
b ¿Tienes dolor de los muelas?  
c Le duele el pie.  
d Me duelen los brazos.  
e Le duele la rodilla.  
f ¿Tiene usted dolor de cabeza?  
g Tiene dolor de oídos.  
h ¿Tenéis dolor de ojos?

**i** ¿Les duele la espalda?  
**j** Le duele la espalda.

**II a** tenemos razón **b** no tienes razón **c** tengo calor **d** tiene sed **e** tienen hambre **f** tenemos frío **g** tengo sed **h** usted tiene mucho sueño **i** tenemos suerte **j** tengo prisa **k** no tienen razón **l** tengo mucho frío **m** tienen calor **n** tenemos sed **o** tengo miedo de las arañas **p** ¿tienes sed? **q** ¿tiene frío? **r** ¿tenéis ganas de comer? **s** ¿tienen hambre? **t** ¿tienes razón? **u** ¡no tiene razón! **v** ¿tenéis miedo? **w** no tengo miedo **x** no tiene miedo **y** tenemos que irnos **z** siempre tiene razón

### 1.8.3

**I a** hay, hay **b** hay, hay **c** había **d** había, hay **e** había

### 1.8.4

**I a** conozco **b** conoce **c** saben **d** conocemos **e** conoce **f** conocen **g** conocen **h** sabemos **i** saben **j** sabe **k** sé

### 1.8.7

**I a** Me acuerdo de John. **b** El se acuerda de mí. **c** Se acuerda de mi casa. **d** Recordamos nuestras vacaciones. **e** Me acuerdo de su mujer. **f** Recuerdo su sonrisa. **g** Mis niños se acuerdan de ella.

### 1.8.8

**I a** Yo no fui nunca a España. **b** Ellos no hicieron daño a nadie. **c** No veo nunca a Alicia./Nunca veo a Alicia. **d** No tienen nada en su casa. **e** ¿No aprendiste nunca a nadar? **f** Yo no veo a nadie. **g** Ella no monta nunca en bicicleta. **h** No tengo nada en mi bolsillo.

**i** Nunca he ido a Mallorca. **j** Nadie está en casa.

**II a** iv **b** vi **c** i **d** ii **e** v **f** iii

### 1.8.9

**I a** dónde **b** cómo **c** cuándo **d** por qué **e** qué **f** cuándo **g** cuántos **h** a quién

### 1.8.10

**I a** Vivo aquí desde hace ... **b** Aprendo el español desde hace ... **c** Conozco a mi mejor amigo/a desde hace ...

**II a** acaba **b** acaba **c** acabamos **d** acaban **e** acabo

**III** Acabo de encontrarme con mi amigo Joe en el pueblo; no le veo desde hace diez años. Me acuerdo de cuando estábamos en la misma escuela; tiene un año más que yo: tengo 23 años y él tiene 24.

“¿Cómo estás, y dónde vives ahora?” le pregunté. Contestó “estoy bien, pero ahora vivo en Londres, donde trabajo en una agencia de viajes. Pues nunca veo a mis amigos, en efecto no hemos visto a nadie desde que dejamos los EEUU.”

Dije “Nunca he visitado Londres. Voy a buscar a mi mujer – está en aquella tienda. Si tienes sed – ¿por qué no vamos a tomar algo?”

“Buena idea, en efecto tengo hambre también; tengo ganas de comer algo. Aquí hay un buen restaurante. Si logro hallar a mi mujer la traeré también.”

“Os veremos en el restaurante en diez minutos.”



sister, restaurant, market, morning, vegetables, soup, lunch, dishes, night, fridge

## 2.2

**I** a el b la c el d el e la  
f el g la h la i el j el k el

**II** a la b la c la d la e la  
f el g la h el i la j el

**III** a el b el c el d el e la  
f la g el h el i la j la k el  
l el m el n el o el p la q la  
r la s la t el

## 2.3.1

**I** a los peces b los gatos c los barcos d las terrazas e los padres f las moscas g los castillos h los alemanes i los españoles

**II** a Estudio en *la* universidad de Harvard; me gustan *las* matemáticas, pero odio *la* informática; ¡*el* profesor es antipático! Nos da *los* deberes más difíciles, y *las* notas que da son fatales. *Los* compañeros de clase tienen *los* mismos problemas. *La* semana que viene tenemos *el* examen. Si no apruebo, tendré que repetir *el* curso, pero al menos, ¡pronto llegan *las* vacaciones! b Trabajo en *el* supermercado local; *el* jefe me trata bien, y no trabajo *los* fines de semana, muy importante para *la* gente con familia. Tengo que trabajar *los* lunes hasta *las* diez de *la* tarde, pues mi mujer tiene que estar con *los* hijos; como empiezo a *las* dos, podría quedar en *la* cama hasta *el* mediodía – excepto que mi mujer me deja *las* tareas de casa...

## 2.4

**I** a un b una c un d una  
e un f una g un h una i una  
j un

## 2.4.1

**I** a Juan es bailaror. b Rodríguez es estudiante. c Ramón es cantante. d Enrique es actor. e Estrellita es católica. f Pilar es empleada. g Es automovilista.

## 2.5

**I** a la b la c el d la e la  
f el g la h el i la j el k la  
l la m la n la o el p el q la  
r el s la t la

## 2.6.1

**I** a mis b mi c mi d mis e mis  
f mi g mis h mi i mis j mi

**II** a mi b mi c mi d mis  
e mis f mi g mi h mi i mis  
j mi

**III** a mis b mi c mi d mi  
e mi f mi g mis h mis i mi  
j mi k mis

## 2.6.2

**I** a tus b tu c tu d tus e tu  
f tus g tu h tus i tus j tu

**II** a tus b tu c tu d tus e tus  
f tu g tu h tus i tus j tus

## 2.6.3

**I** a sus b su c su d su e su  
f sus g su h su i sus j su

**II** a su b su c sus d su e sus  
f su g su h sus i su j sus

## 2.6.4

I a nuestra b nuestro  
c nuestros d nuestra e nuestros  
f nuestro g nuestro h nuestro  
i nuestro j nuestros

## 2.6.5

I a vuestra b vuestra c vuestro  
d vuestros e vuestro f vuestros  
g vuestro h vuestros i vuestra  
j vuestras

## 2.6.6

I a su b su c sus d su e sus  
f sus g su h su i sus j su

## 2.6.7

I a su b su c sus d sus e su  
f sus g sus h su i su j sus

II ¡Mis amigos son muy competitivos! Juan dice que **su** BMW es más rápido que **mi** Alfa Romeo; ¡no es verdad! Enrique y Concha dicen que **sus** coches son más cómodos que **nuestros** coches. ¿Cómo es **tu** coche? **Nuestro** pueblo es un buen lugar para vivir, pero Concha dice que **sus** padres viven en un pueblo más bonito y que **su** casa es como un palacio. ¿**Tus** amigos son tan competitivos como **mis** amigos?

## 2.7.1

I a este b esta c este d estas  
e estos

## 2.7.2

I a ese b esa c esos d esas

II a aquel b aquella c aquellos  
d aquellas e aquel

## 2.7.3

I a cuánto b cuántas c cuánto  
d cuántos

## 2.7.4

I *Algunos* hombres beben té *varias* veces al día, *otros* hombres prefieren el café. A *muchas* mujeres les gusta el vino blanco y a *algunas* el vino tinto, pero *pocas* mujeres prefieren la cerveza. *Demasiados* jóvenes beben *demasiado* todos los fines de semana, *ambos* jóvenes hombres y mujeres. No *todas* las personas hacen esto, y *muchos* prefieren cenar en un restaurante. *Ciertas* personas van al *mismo* lugar *todas* las veces que salen a cenar. ¿Por qué? ¡*Ninguna* idea!

## 3.1.8

I a yo b nosotros/nosotras  
c ellas d ellos e él f ella g tú/  
usted/vosotros/vosotras/ustedes

II a él b ellos c yo d usted  
e nosotros f ellas g ella h ellos  
i tú j él

## 3.2

I a new car b it c a cat  
d a tree e the door mirror  
f a bunch of flowers g the car

## 3.2.1

I a las b la c la d la e la  
f la g los h los i la

## 3.2.2

I a te b me c os d nos  
(visitarnos)

## 3.2.3

I a me b os c te d nos

**I** a me b her c me d him  
 e me f her g me h him i her  
 j him k her l me m me

**3.3.1**

**I** te, me, nos, te, le, les, os, le

**3.3.2**

**I** a me los/las b mándeselo/la  
 c se lo d dártelos/dárselas, etc.  
 e contárselo

**3.3.3**

**I** a me lo/la b quitárselo/la  
 c nos los/las d explicárselo  
 e pónganselos

**3.4**

**I** a él b ella c ellas d usted  
 e ti f vosotras g ustedes h mí  
 i nosotros

**3.4.1**

**I** a ¡míranos! b ¡mírale!  
 c ¡míralas! d ¡mírala! e ¡mírame!

**3.5.1**

**I** a ¡Lavaos! b ¡Lávese!  
 c ¡Lávate!

**3.6**

**I** a cuántas b cuánta c cuántos  
 d cuánto e cuántas

**3.7**

**I** a la mía b los míos c el mío  
 d las mías e mías f mía g míos  
 h mío

**II** a las suyas b el suyo c los  
 suyos d la suya e suyo f suya  
 g suyos h suyas

**III** a los vuestros b el vuestro c la  
 vuestra d las vuestras e vuestros  
 f vuestra g vuestras h vuestro

**3.8.4**

**I** a a quien/a la cual b que c a  
 quien(es) d cuyo e quien f que

**3.9**

**I** a éste b éstas c éste d ésta  
 e éste f ésta g éstos h éste  
 i éstos j éstos

**II** a ésas/aquéllas b ésa/aquélla  
 c ésas/aquéllas d ése/aquél  
 e ésos/aquéllos f ése/aquél  
 g ésa/aquélla h ése/aquél  
 i ésa/aquélla j ésos/aquéllos

**III** No me gusta este libro,  
 prefiero ése, pero me encanta  
 aquél. Odio esta tableta gris, me  
 gusta bastante ésa blanca, pero  
 quiero aquélla azul. Estos móviles  
 Nokia son feos, ésos son demasiado  
 baratos, pero me molan aquéllos.

**4**

**I** a short, fat b long, blond, green  
 c new d new, casual e large, old  
 f tall, dark g small h older,  
 younger i favourite j cold

**4.1**

**I**  
 a nuevo/antiguo  
 b nueva/antigua  
 c nuevos/antiguos  
 d nuevas/antiguas  
 e nuevo/antiguo  
 f nueva/antigua  
 g nuevos/antiguos  
 h nuevas/antiguas

**4.1.4**

**I** d grande e débil  
 g inteligentes i guapa j fáciles

**m** mala **n** jóvenes **p** delgada  
**q** trabajadores **t** amistosos

**I** **a** gordo **b** gorda **c** holgazana  
**d** buenos **e** trabajador  
**f** trabajadora **g** buenas **h** buenos  
**i** natural **j** naturales **k** vieja  
**l** viejo **m** Bajos **n** baja **o** nueva  
**p** nuevo **q** nuevos, caros **r** ancha  
**s** grande **t** buenas

#### 4.1.5

**I** **a** alemán **b** inglés  
**c** americana **d** español  
**e** españoles **f** ingleses **g** italiano  
**h** americanos **i** escocés  
**j** canadienses

#### 4.1.6

**I** **a** roja **b** marrones **c** verde  
**d** azul **e** naranja **f** blancos  
**g** violeta **h** amarillas **i** negro  
**j** grises **k** rosada

#### 4.1.7

**I** **a** mal **b** primer **c** San  
**d** gran **e** gran **f** ninguna  
**g** buen **h** cien **i** tercer **j** algún

**II** **Ejemplo positivo:** Hoy iré al zoo *fantástico* con mis hijos *muy majos* en mi coche *rápido*. Veremos los animales *más interesantes*: elefantes *enormes*, jirafas *elegantes*, leones *magníficos*, tigres *feroces*, y monos *graciosos*. Visitaremos el lago *hermoso* donde hay patos *bonitos* y gansos *preciosos*, y la casa de los réptiles con serpientes *fascinantes* y lagartos *veloces*. Vamos a llevar un picnic *delicioso*: bocadillos *muy ricos*, patatas fritas *crujientes*, fruta *muy dulce* y bebidas *refrescantes*. **Ejemplo negativo:** Hoy iré al zoo *aburrido* con mis hijos *muy traviesos* en mi coche *lento*. Veremos los animales *más ordinarios*: elefantes *grotescos*, jirafas

*feas*, leones *patéticos*, tigres *cobardes*, y monos *sosos*. Visitaremos el lago *feo* donde hay patos *desagradables* y gansos *irritantes*, y la casa de los réptiles con serpientes *repulsivos* y lagartos *asquerosos*. Vamos a llevar un picnic *repugnante*: bocadillos *muy insípidos*, patatas fritas *pastosas*, fruta *muy agrio* y bebidas *fétidos*.

#### 4.4.1

**I** **a** más rápido **b** más guapa  
**c** más grandes **d** más interesantes  
**e** más difícil **f** más hermosa  
**g** más cara **h** más pobres **i** un collar más precioso **j** una bicicleta más bonita

**II** **a** más **b** más **c** menos **d** más  
**e** menos **f** más **g** más **h** más  
**i** menos **j** más

#### 4.4.2

**I** **a** más **b** más **c** más **d** el más  
**e** las más **f** más **g** la más **h** las más

**II** **a** más alta **b** más largo **c** más seca  
**d** la más lluviosa **e** más industrializada  
**f** la más famosa **g** más interesantes  
**h** más conocido **i** más guapa **j** más antigua

#### 4.4.3

**I** **a** tan grande como **b** más grande que  
**c** menos grande que **d** menos grandes que  
**e** menos grande que **f** más grandes que

**II** **a** más alto que **b** menos largo que  
**c** más caluroso que **d** tan hermoso como  
**e** más agotadora que

**I** a mejor b mejores c mejor  
d mejores e mejor f mejores

**II** a el mejor b los mejores  
c las mejores d la mejor e la  
mejor f los mejores g la mejor  
h el mejor

## 4.4.5

**I** NB. These are examples only.

marido/mujer: Este marido es más alto que su mujer, pero es menos inteligente; ella es tan gorda como su marido.

hijo/hija: Su hijo es tan inteligente como su hija, pero la hija es más trabajadora que su hermano; es la más trabajadora de su clase.

amigo/amiga: Mi amigo es más rico que mi amiga, pero es menos generoso que ella; él es tan amable como ella.

casa/oficina: Mi casa no es tan moderna como mi oficina, pero es más cómoda; la oficina es menos conveniente.

pueblo/ciudad: Nuestro pueblo es más pequeño que tu ciudad, pero tu ciudad es más interesante; no es tan antigua.

televisor/radio: Tu televisor es menos moderno que mi radio, pero es más fiable que la radio; es el aparato más fiable de los dos.

móvil/tableta: Este móvil es menos caro que esa tableta, pero la tableta es más útil que el móvil; son los más modernos que hay.

perro/gato: Mi perro es más leal que tu gato, pero el gato es más independiente que el perro. Los gatos son tan bonitos que los perros.

colegio/universidad: El colegio de nuestro pueblo es menos antiguo que la universidad; la universidad es la más antigua de España, pero el colegio es tan famoso como la universidad.

reloj/pulsera: Aquel reloj es tan caro como esta pulsera, pero es menos bonito que la pulsera; pero el reloj es más útil que la pulsera.

## 5.1.1

**I** a secamente b locamente  
c sencillamente d rápidamente  
e enormemente f sinceramente  
g raramente h felizmente  
i verdaderamente j seriamente

## 5.3

**I** a lentamente (despacio)  
b completamente c estrictamente  
d demasiado e fuerte(mente)  
(alto)

## 6.2.10

**I** a a la b al c a la d al e al  
f a la g al h a la i al j al

**II** a de b de c de las d del  
e del f de g de h de los i de  
j de

**III** a al, con b en c con d a la  
e enfrente del f después de, a la  
g con h hasta